



Revelation

translationNotes

v10

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 10

Published: 2017-10-03

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	16
Introduction to Revelation	16
Revelation 01 General Notes	19
Revelation 1:1-3	21
Revelation 1:4-6	23
Revelation 1:7-8	26
Revelation 1:9-11	28
Revelation 1:12-13	31
Revelation 1:14-16	33
Revelation 1:17-18	35
Revelation 1:19-20	37
Revelation 02 General Notes	39
Revelation 2:1-2	41
Revelation 2:3-5	43
Revelation 2:6-7	45
Revelation 2:8-9	47
Revelation 2:10-11	49
Revelation 2:12-13	51
Revelation 2:14-15	53
Revelation 2:16-17	55
Revelation 2:18-19	57
Revelation 2:20-21	59
Revelation 2:22-23	61
Revelation 2:24-25	63
Revelation 2:26-29	65
Revelation 03 General Notes	67
Revelation 3:1-2	69
Revelation 3:3-4	71
Revelation 3:5-6	73
Revelation 3:7-8	75
Revelation 3:9-11	77
Revelation 3:12-13	79
Revelation 3:14-16	81
Revelation 3:17-18	83
Revelation 3:19-20	85
Revelation 3:21-22	87
Revelation 04 General Notes	89
Revelation 4:1-3	90
Revelation 4:4-5	92
Revelation 4:6	94

Table of Contents

Revelation 4:7	95
Revelation 4:9-11	97
Revelation 05 General Notes	100
Revelation 5:1-2	101
Revelation 5:3-5	103
Revelation 5:6-7	105
Revelation 5:8	107
Revelation 5:9-10	109
Revelation 5:11-12	111
Revelation 5:13-14	113
Revelation 06 General Notes	115
Revelation 6:1-2	116
Revelation 6:3-4	118
Revelation 6:5-6	120
Revelation 6:7-8	122
Revelation 6:9-11	124
Revelation 6:12-14	126
Revelation 6:15-17	128
Revelation 07 General Notes	130
Revelation 7:1-3	131
Revelation 7:4-6	133
Revelation 7:7-8	135
Revelation 7:9-10	136
Revelation 7:11-12	138
Revelation 7:13-14	140
Revelation 7:15-17	142
Revelation 08 General Notes	145
Revelation 8:1-2	146
Revelation 8:3-5	147
Revelation 8:6-7	149
Revelation 8:8-9	151
Revelation 8:10-11	153
Revelation 8:12	155
Revelation 8:13	156
Revelation 09 General Notes	157
Revelation 9:1-2	159
Revelation 9:3-4	161
Revelation 9:5-6	163
Revelation 9:7-9	165
Revelation 9:10-12	167
Revelation 9:13-15	169
Revelation 9:16-17	171
Revelation 9:18-19	173

Revelation 9:20-21	174
Revelation 10 General Notes	176
Revelation 10:1-2	177
Revelation 10:3-4	179
Revelation 10:5-7	181
Revelation 10:8-9	183
Revelation 10:10-11	185
Revelation 11 General Notes	186
Revelation 11:1-2	188
Revelation 11:3-5	190
Revelation 11:6-7	192
Revelation 11:8-9	194
Revelation 11:10-12	196
Revelation 11:13-14	198
Revelation 11:15	200
Revelation 11:16-17	202
Revelation 11:18	204
Revelation 11:19	206
Revelation 12 General Notes	208
Revelation 12:1-2	209
Revelation 12:3-4	211
Revelation 12:5-6	213
Revelation 12:7-9	215
Revelation 12:10	217
Revelation 12:11-12	219
Revelation 12:13-14	221
Revelation 12:15-18	223
Revelation 13 General Notes	225
Revelation 13:1-2	226
Revelation 13:3-4	228
Revelation 13:5-6	230
Revelation 13:7-8	232
Revelation 13:9-10	234
Revelation 13:11-12	236
Revelation 13:13-14	238
Revelation 13:15-17	239
Revelation 13:18	241
Revelation 14 General Notes	243
Revelation 14:1-2	244
Revelation 14:3-5	246
Revelation 14:6-7	248
Revelation 14:8	250
Revelation 14:9-10	252

Table of Contents

Revelation 14:11-12	254
Revelation 14:13	256
Revelation 14:14-16	258
Revelation 14:17-18	260
Revelation 14:19-20	261
Revelation 15 General Notes	263
Revelation 15:1	264
Revelation 15:2	266
Revelation 15:3-4	268
Revelation 15:5-6	270
Revelation 15:7-8	272
Revelation 16 General Notes	274
Revelation 16:1	275
Revelation 16:2	277
Revelation 16:3	278
Revelation 16:4-7	279
Revelation 16:8-9	282
Revelation 16:10-11	284
Revelation 16:12-14	286
Revelation 16:15-16	288
Revelation 16:17-19	290
Revelation 16:20-21	292
Revelation 17 General Notes	293
Revelation 17:1-2	294
Revelation 17:3-5	296
Revelation 17:6-7	298
Revelation 17:8	300
Revelation 17:9-10	302
Revelation 17:11	304
Revelation 17:12-14	305
Revelation 17:15	307
Revelation 17:16-17	309
Revelation 17:18	311
Revelation 18 General Notes	312
Revelation 18:1-3	313
Revelation 18:4-6	316
Revelation 18:7-8	319
Revelation 18:9-10	321
Revelation 18:11-12	323
Revelation 18:14	326
Revelation 18:15-17	327
Revelation 18:18-20	330
Revelation 18:21-22	332

Revelation 18:23-24	334
Revelation 19 General Notes	336
Revelation 19:1-2	337
Revelation 19:3-4	339
Revelation 19:5	341
Revelation 19:6	343
Revelation 19:7-8	345
Revelation 19:9-10	347
Revelation 19:11-13	349
Revelation 19:14-16	351
Revelation 19:17-18	353
Revelation 19:19-20	355
Revelation 19:21	357
Revelation 20 General Notes	358
Revelation 20:1-3	360
Revelation 20:4	362
Revelation 20:5-6	364
Revelation 20:7-8	366
Revelation 20:9-10	368
Revelation 20:11-12	370
Revelation 20:13-15	372
Revelation 21 General Notes	374
Revelation 21:1-2	375
Revelation 21:3-4	376
Revelation 21:5-6	378
Revelation 21:7-8	380
Revelation 21:9-10	382
Revelation 21:11-13	384
Revelation 21:14-15	386
Revelation 21:16-17	387
Revelation 21:18-20	388
Revelation 21:21-22	390
Revelation 21:23-25	392
Revelation 21:26-27	394
Revelation 22 General Notes	396
Revelation 22:1-2	397
Revelation 22:3-5	399
Revelation 22:6-7	401
Revelation 22:8-9	403
Revelation 22:10-11	405
Revelation 22:12-13	407
Revelation 22:14-15	409
Revelation 22:16	411

Table of Contents

Revelation 22:17	413
Revelation 22:18-19	415
Revelation 22:20-21	417
translationQuestions	418
Revelation 1	418
Revelation 2	420
Revelation 3	423
Revelation 4	425
Revelation 5	426
Revelation 6	428
Revelation 7	430
Revelation 8	432
Revelation 9	434
Revelation 10	436
Revelation 11	437
Revelation 12	439
Revelation 13	441
Revelation 14	443
Revelation 15	445
Revelation 16	446
Revelation 17	448
Revelation 18	450
Revelation 19	452
Revelation 20	454
Revelation 21	456
Revelation 22	458
translationWords	460
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed	461
accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations	462
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses	463
adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies	465
Almighty	466
altar, altars	468
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, won- ders	470
amen, truly	472
angel, angels, archangel	474
anger, angered, angry	478
anoint, anointed, anointing	479
antichrist, antichrists	481
apostle, apostles, apostleship	482
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	484

Asher	485
Asia	486
authority, authorities	487
avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance	489
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians	491
Balaam	493
barley	494
bear, bears	495
beast, beasts	496
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief	498
beloved	501
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites	502
bind, bond, bound	503
blameless	505
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies	506
bless, blessed, blessing	508
blood	510
Book of Life	512
bow and arrow, bows and arrows	513
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down	514
breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece	516
breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing	517
bride, brides, bridal	519
bridegroom, bridegrooms	520
bronze	521
brother, brothers	522
burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome	524
call, calls, calling, called	525
captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity	527
chariot, chariots, charioteers	529
children, child	530
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	532
Christ, Messiah	534
church, churches, Church	536
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, un- clean	538
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed	540
column, columns, pillar, pillars	541
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments	542
commander, commanders	544
commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment	545
condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation	546
corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly	547

Table of Contents

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards	548
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen	550
create, creates, created, creation, creator	552
creature, creatures	554
crown, crowns, crowned	556
crucify, crucified	558
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	560
curse, cursed, curses, cursing	562
darkness	564
David	566
deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive	568
defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled	570
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	572
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants	574
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses	575
desolate, desolation, desolations	576
detest, detested, detestable	577
devour, devours, devoured, devouring	578
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly	579
drunk, drunkard	582
eagle, eagles	583
earth, earthen, earthly	584
Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians	586
elder, elders	588
Elisha	589
endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance	590
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants	592
Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians	594
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	595
Euphrates River, the River	598
evil, wicked, wickedness	599
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins	601
face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown	603
faith	605
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness	607
faithless, faithlessness	609
false prophet, false prophets	610
famine, famines	611
fear, fears, afraid	612
fig, figs	614
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots	615
firstborn	617

firstfruits	619
flesh	620
flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters	622
flute, flutes, pipe, pipes	624
found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations	625
fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing	627
frankincense	628
free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty	629
fulfill, fulfilled	631
furnace	633
Gad	634
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways	635
Gentile, Gentiles	636
gift, gifts	637
glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies	638
God	641
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	644
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry	646
gold, golden	648
good news, gospel	650
grace, gracious	652
grape, grapes, grapevine	654
grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place	655
Greek, Grecian	657
Hades, Sheol	658
hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm	660
hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness	661
harp, harps, harpist, harpists	663
harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters	664
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded	666
heart, hearts	668
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly	670
Hebrew, Hebrews	673
hell, lake of fire	674
holy city, holy cities	676
Holy One	677
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	678
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	680
honey, honeycomb	683
honor, honors	684
horn, horns, horned	686
horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback	687
hour, hours	688

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures	689
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	691
incense, incenses	693
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	694
Israel, Israelites	696
Issachar	698
Jerusalem	699
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	701
Jew, Jewish, Jews	704
Jezebel	706
John (the apostle)	707
Joseph (OT)	709
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing	710
Judah	712
judge, judges	713
judge, judges, judgment, judgments	714
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification	716
kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses	719
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly	720
kingdom, kingdoms	722
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge	724
labor, in labor, labor pains	726
labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers	727
lamb, Lamb of God	728
lamp, lamps	731
lampstand, lampstands	732
last day, last days, latter days	733
leopard, leopards	734
Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical	735
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive	736
light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened	739
like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike	741
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses	743
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs	744
love, loves, loving, loved	747
Manasseh	750
manna	751
Michael	752
might, mighty, mightier, mightily	753

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, re- minding, likeminded	755
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs	757
Moses	759
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully	761
myrrh	762
mystery, mysteries, hidden truth, hidden truths	763
name, names, named	764
Naphtali	766
nation, nations	767
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by	769
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, dis- obeyed, disobedience, disobedient	771
oil	773
olive, olives	774
palm, palms	775
patient, patiently, patience, impatient	776
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers	777
people group, peoples, the people, a people	779
people of God, my people	781
pit, pits, pitfall	783
plague, plagues	784
power, powers	785
praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy	787
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed	789
priest, priests, priesthood	791
prince, princes, princess, princesses	793
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, im- prisonments	795
proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations	797
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	798
prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored	801
prostrate, prostrated	802
proud, proudly, pride, prideful	803
punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished	805
pure, purify, purification	807
queen, queens	809
reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping	810
receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver	811
reed, reeds	813
reign, reigns, reigned, reigning	814
repent, repents, repented, repentance	815
rest, rests, rested, resting, restless	817

Table of Contents

resurrection	819
Reuben	821
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation	822
reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder	824
right hand	826
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness	828
robe, robes, robed	831
rod, rods	832
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled	833
sackcloth	835
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings	836
Satan, devil, evil one	838
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation	840
scroll, scrolls	842
seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed	843
send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out	844
serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers	845
serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice	846
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	848
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding	850
sign, signs, proof, reminder	852
silver	854
Simeon	855
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning	856
slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous	859
slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering	860
snow, snowed, snowing	861
Sodom	862
Son of God, Son	863
Son of Man, son of man	865
son, sons	867
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft	869
soul, souls	870
spirit, spirits, spiritual	872
splendor	874
strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening	875
stumbling block, stumbling blocks, stone of stumbling	877
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings	878
sulfur, sulfurous	880
sword, swords, swordsmen	881
synagogue	883
temple	884
tent of meeting	886

tent, tents, tentmakers	887
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying	888
test, tests, tested	889
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses	891
thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing	894
throne, thrones, enthroned	895
time, timely, times, untimely	897
torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors	899
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen	900
tribulation	901
true, truth, truths	902
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters	904
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	905
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back	907
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes	909
vine, vines	910
vision, visions, envision	911
voice, voices	912
waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands	914
watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful	915
water, waters, watered, watering	916
wheat	918
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine	919
winepress	921
wise, wisdom	922
woe	924
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures	926
word, words	928
works, deeds, work, acts	930
world, worldly	932
worship	934
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	936
wrath, fury	938
written	940
Zebulun	941
Zion, Mount Zion	942
translationAcademy	943
Abstract Nouns	944
Active or Passive	947
Apostrophe	952
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	954

Background Information	959
Biblical Distance	962
Biblical Money	965
Biblical Volume	967
Biblical Weight	971
Copy or Borrow Words	973
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	975
Double Negatives	978
Doublet	980
Ellipsis	982
End of Story	984
First, Second, or Third Person	986
Forms of You	988
Fractions	989
Generic Noun Phrases	992
Go and Come	994
How to Translate Names	997
Idiom	1001
Inclusive “We”	1004
Introduction of New and Old Participants	1005
Merism	1008
Metaphor	1010
Metonymy	1020
Numbers	1024
Order of Events	1028
Ordinal Numbers	1030
Parallelism	1033
Personification	1036
Quotations and Quote Margins	1038
Reflexive Pronouns	1040
Rhetorical Question	1043
Simile	1047
Symbolic Action	1051
Symbolic Language	1053
Symbolic Prophecy	1057
Synecdoche	1060
Textual Variants	1062
Translate Unknowns	1064
Translating Son and Father	1068

translationNotes

Introduction to Revelation

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Revelation

1. Opening (1:1-20)
2. Letters to the seven churches (2:1-3:22)
3. Vision of God in heaven, and a vision of the Lamb (4:1-11)
4. The seven seals (6:1-8:1)
5. The seven trumpets (8:2-13:18)
6. Worshipers of the Lamb, the martyrs, and the harvest of wrath (14:1-20)
7. The seven bowls (15:1-18:24)
8. Worship in heaven (19:1-10)
9. The Lamb's judgment, the destruction of the beast, the thousand years, the destruction of Satan, and the final judgment (20:11-15)
10. The new creation and the new Jerusalem (21:1-22:5)
11. Jesus' promise to return, the witness from the angels, John's closing words, Christ's message to his church, the invitation and the warning (22:6-21)

Who wrote the Book of Revelation?

The author identified himself as John. This was probably the Apostle John. He wrote the Book of Revelation while on the island of Patmos. The Romans exiled John there for teaching people about Jesus.

What is the Book of Revelation about?

John wrote the Book of Revelation to encourage believers to remain faithful even when they are suffering. John described visions he had of Satan and his followers fighting against and killing believers. In the visions God causes many terrible things to happen on the earth to punish wicked people. In the end, Jesus defeats Satan and his followers. Then Jesus comforts those who were faithful. And the believers will live forever with God in the new heavens and earth.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by one of its traditional titles, "Revelation," "The Revelation of Jesus Christ," "The Revelation to Saint John," or "The Apocalypse of John." Or they may choose a possibly clearer title, such as "The Things that Jesus Christ Showed to John." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

What type of writing is the Book of Revelation?

John used a special style of writing to describe his visions. John described what he saw by using many symbols. This style of writing is called symbolic prophecy or apocalyptic literature. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**Are the events of Revelation past or future?**

Since early Christian times, scholars have interpreted Revelation differently. Some scholars think John described events that happened during his time. Some scholars think John described events happening from his time until the return of Jesus. Other scholars think John described events that will happen in a short period of time just before Christ returns.

Translators will not need to decide how to interpret the book before they translate it. Translators should leave the prophecies in the tenses that are used in the ULB.

Are there any other books in the Bible like Revelation?

No other book of the Bible is like the Book of Revelation. But, passages in Ezekiel, Zechariah, and especially Daniel are similar in content and style to Revelation. It may be beneficial to translate Revelation at the same time as Daniel since they have some imagery and style in common.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues**Does one need to understand the Book of Revelation to translate it?**

One does not need to understand all of the symbols in the Book of Revelation to translate it properly. Translators should not give possible meanings for the symbols or numbers in their translation. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Revelation in the ULB?

The scriptures use these words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating REvelation into English, the ULB uses the following principles: *The meaning in two passages indicates moral holiness. Here, the ULB uses “holy.”* (See: 14:12; 22:11) Usually the meaning in Revelation indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULB uses “believer” or “believers.” (See: 5:8; 8:3, 4; 11:18; 13:7; 16:6; 17:6; 18:20, 24; 19:8; 20:9) * Sometimes the meaning implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULB uses “sanctify,” “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.”

The UDB will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

Periods of time

John referred to various periods of time in Revelation. For example, there are many references to forty-two months, seven years, and three and a half days. Some scholars think these time periods are symbolic. Other scholars think these are actual time periods. The translator should treat these time periods as referencing actual periods of time. It is then up to the interpreter to determine their significance or what they may represent.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Revelation?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of Revelation:

- “‘I am the alpha and the omega,’ says the Lord God, ‘the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty’” (1:8). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some versions add the phrase “the Beginning and the End.”
- “the elders prostrated themselves and worshiped” (5:14). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older versions read, “the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever.”
- “so that a third of it [the earth] was burned up” (8:7). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older versions do not include this phrase.
- Some manuscripts add the phrase “and who is to come” (11:17). But the ULB, UDB, and most modern versions do not.
- Some manuscripts add the phrase “before the throne of God” (14:5). But the ULB, UDB, and most modern versions do not.
- “the one who is and who was, the Holy One” (16:5). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older manuscripts read, “O Lord, the One who is and who was and who is to be.”
- “The nations will walk by the light of that city” (21:24). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older manuscripts read, “The nations that are saved will walk by the light of that city.”
- “Blessed are those who wash their robes” (22:14). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older manuscripts read “Blessed are those who do his commandments.”
- “God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city” (22:19). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions read this way. Some older manuscripts read, “God will take away his share in the book of life and in the holy city.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Revelation 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter explains how the book is a recording of the vision John received on the island of Patmos.

Some translations indent quotations from the Old Testament. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 1:7.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven churches

This letter was specifically addressed to seven actual churches located in the modern country of Turkey.

White

White is a color that often symbolizes holiness or righteousness in scripture. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Him who is, and who was, and who is to come”

The phrase explains that God has always existed, exists now and will always exist. Not all languages have a way to easily translate the past, present and future aspects of a verb. It is possible this is a play on the name of God, Yahweh, which means “I am.”

His blood

This is a reference to Jesus’ death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“He is coming with the clouds”

Many scholars believe Jesus will come back in two stages. Jesus’ first return will be subtle, like a “thief in the night.” Then, Jesus will come in an undeniable way where everyone will see him. It is this latter coming that the book of Revelation is about.

Jesus

The image of the man in heaven is probably Jesus. Overall, the image is a description of Jesus in all of his glory. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [glorifies](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” It is possible this is a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

Links:

- [Revelation 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Revelation intro](#)

Revelation 1:1-3

UDB:

¹ This book has the things that Jesus Christ showed to me, John. God showed these things to Jesus in order that he might pass them on to his servants. These things will happen soon. Jesus communicated these things by sending his angel to me, his servant John. ² As a witness I, John, reported everything I saw and heard about the word of God, and the true accounts that were given about Jesus Christ. ³ God will do good to anyone who reads these words and to any who hear them when they are being read aloud. He will do good to those who listen carefully to them and obey them, for the time when these things happen is approaching quickly.

ULB:

¹ This is the revelation of Jesus Christ that God gave him to show his servants what must soon take place. He made it known by sending his angel to his servant John. ² John testified about the word of God and about the testimony given about Jesus Christ, all the things that he saw. ³ Blessed is the one who reads aloud this prophecy, and those who listen to the words of this prophecy and who obey what is written in it, because the time is near.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is an introduction to the book of Revelation. It explains that it is a revelation from Jesus Christ and it gives a blessing to those who read it.

his servants

This refers to people who believe in Christ.

what must soon take place

“the events that must happen soon”

made it known

“communicated it”

to his servant John

John wrote this book and was referring to himself here. AT: “to me, John, his servant” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

the word of God

“Word of God” here is a metonym for the message from God. AT: “God’s message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the one who reads aloud

This does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone who reads it aloud. AT: “anyone who reads aloud” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

obey what is written in it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “obey what John has written in it” or “obey what they read in it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the time is near

“the things that must happen will soon happen”

translationWords

- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- angel, angels, archangel
- John (the apostle)
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- bless, blessed, blessing
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- written

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:4-6

UDB:

⁴ I, John, am writing this letter to the seven groups of believers in the province of Asia. May God be kind to you and give you peace, for he is the one who has always existed, who exists now, and who will always exist in the future. May the seven spirits who are sitting in front of his throne do these things for you, too. ⁵ May Jesus Christ—who has faithfully told us the truth about God and—also be kind to you and give you peace. For he is the first one whom God raised from the dead, and he is the one who rules the kings of the earth. He is the one who loves us and who has freed us from the guilt of our sins by his blood when he died on the cross. ⁶ He is the one who has begun to rule over his kingdom; he has set us apart to be priests who worship God his Father as he commanded. It is Jesus Christ whom we must honor and praise forever. This is the truth.

ULB:

⁴ John, to the seven churches in Asia: May grace be to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, and from the seven spirits who are before his throne, ⁵ and from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To the one who loves us and has released us from our sins by his blood—⁶ he has made us a kingdom, priests for his God and Father—to him be the glory and the power forever and ever. Amen.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of John's letter. Here he names himself as the writer and greets the people he is writing to.

May grace be to you and peace from the one who is ... and from the seven spirits ... and from Jesus Christ

This is a wish or blessing. John speaks as if these were things that God could give, although they are really ways in which he hopes God will act for his people. AT: "May he who is ... and the seven spirits ... and Jesus Christ treat you kindly and enable you to live peacefully and securely" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

from the one who is

"from God, who is"

who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The “seven spirits” refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the firstborn from the dead

“the first person to be raised from death”

from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

has released us

“has set us free”

has made us a kingdom, priests

“has set us apart and begun to rule over us and he has made us priests”

his God and Father

This is one person. AT: “God, his Father”

Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

to him be the glory and the power

This is a wish or prayer. Possible meanings are 1) “May people honor his glory and power” or 2) “May he have glory and power.” John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the power

This probably refers to his authority as king.

translationWords

- John (the apostle)
- church, churches, Church
- Asia
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- throne, thrones, enthroned
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- firstborn
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- love, loves, loving, loved
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- blood
- kingdom, kingdoms
- priest, priests, priesthood
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- power, powers
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- amen, truly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Look! Christ is coming in the clouds. Everyone will see him, including those who killed him by nailing him to a cross. Every tribe on the earth will be in sorrow and grief when they see him coming. That is the truth! ⁸ The Lord God declares, “I am the one who began all things, the Alpha, and I am the one who will cause all things to end, the Omega. I am the one who exists, who has always existed, and who will always exist. I am the One who rules over everything and everyone.”

ULB:

⁷ Look, he is coming with the clouds;

every eye will see him,

including those who pierced him.

All the tribes of the earth will mourn because of him.

Yes, Amen.

⁸ “I am the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” ^[1]

1:8 ^[1]Some versions read, *I am the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end, says the Lord God.*

translationNotes**General Information:**

In verse 7, John is quoting from Daniel and Zechariah.

every eye

Since people see with the eyes, the word “eye” is used to refer to people. AT: “every person” or “everyone” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

including those who pierced him

“even those who pierced him will see him”

pierced him

Jesus' hands and feet were pierced when he was nailed to the cross. Here it refers to people killing him. AT: "killed him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

pierced

made a hole in

the alpha and the omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live." If unclear to readers you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. AT: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))

who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

says the Lord God

Some languages would put "The Lord God says" at the beginning or the end of the whole sentence. (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

translationWords

- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully](#)
- [amen, truly](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ I, John, your fellow believer, am suffering as you are because Jesus rules over us. We share together the call to suffer for our faith. We are part of his reign and rule over all things, and we are patiently enduring every trial and test that comes. I was imprisoned and sent to the Island of Patmos because I kept telling people about God’s message and the truth about Jesus. ¹⁰ On one of the days we worship the Lord with other believers, God’s Spirit took control of me. Then I heard behind me someone speaking. His voice was like a trumpet that was being played. ¹¹ He said to me, “Write on a scroll what you see, and send it to seven groups of believers. Send it to the believers in the cities of Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea.”

ULB:

⁹ I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony about Jesus. ¹⁰ I was in the Spirit on the Lord’s day. I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet. ¹¹ It said, “Write what you see in a book, and send it to the seven churches—to Ephesus, to Smyrna, to Pergamum, to Thyatira, to Sardis, to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

John explains how his vision began and the instructions the Spirit gave him.

your ... you

These refer to the believers in the seven churches. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I, John—your brother and the one who shares with you in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are in Jesus—was

This can be stated as a separate sentence. AT: “I, John, am your brother who who shares with you in God’s kingdom and also suffers and patiently endures trials along with you because we belong to Jesus. I was”

because of the word of God

“Word of God” here is a metonym for the message from God. AT: “because I spoke to others about the message of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I was in the Spirit

John speaks of being influenced by God's Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. AT: "I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me" (See: [Idiom](#))

the Lord's day

the day of worship for believers in Christ

loud voice like a trumpet

The voice was so loud it sounded like a trumpet. (See: [Simile](#))

trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

Smyrna ... Pergamum ... Thyatira ... Sardis ... Philadelphia ... Laodicea

These are names of cities in the region of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- John (the apostle)
- brother, brothers
- suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings
- kingdom, kingdoms
- patient, patiently, patience, impatient
- endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- voice, voices
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:12-13

UDB:

¹² When I heard these words, I turned to see who was speaking. Then I saw seven golden lampstands. ¹³ In the middle of the lampstands there was someone who looked like a human being. He wore a robe that reached to his feet and a golden sash around his chest.

ULB:

¹² I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. ¹³ In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet and a golden sash around his chest.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John begins to explain what he saw in his vision.

whose voice

This refers to the person speaking. AT: “who” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a golden sash

a piece of cloth worn around the chest. It may have had golden threads in it.

translationWords

- voice, voices
- gold, golden
- lampstand, lampstands
- like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike
- Son of Man, son of man
- robe, robes, robed

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ The hair on his head was as white as wool or fresh fallen snow. His eyes were like a brilliant flame. ¹⁵ His feet looked like gleaming bronze. When he spoke, his voice had the volume and depth of a great river of rushing water. ¹⁶ He was holding seven stars in his right hand. A sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face shone as bright as the sun at midday.

ULB:

¹⁴ His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire. ¹⁵ His feet were like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. ¹⁶ He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest.

translationNotes**His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow**

Wool and snow are examples of things that are very white. The repetition of “as white as” emphasizes that they were very white. (See: [Simile](#) and [Doublet](#))

wool

This is the hair of a sheep or goat. It was known to be very white.

his eyes were like a flame of fire

His eyes are described as being full of light like a flame of fire. AT: “his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire” (See: [Simile](#))

His feet were like polished bronze

Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. AT: “His feet were very shiny like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))

like polished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace

The bronze would be refined first and then polished. AT: “like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and polished” (See: [Order of Events](#))

furnace

a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal in it, and the hot fire would burn away any impurities that were in the metal.

the sound of many rushing waters

This is very loud, like the sound of a large, fast flowing river, of a large waterfall, or of loud waves in the sea.

a sword ... was coming out of his mouth

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion.

a sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions.

translationWords

- [head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded](#)
- [snow, snowed, snowing](#)
- [like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ When I saw him, I fell down at his feet as though I were dead. But he put his right hand on me and said to me, "Do not be afraid! I am the First One who began all things and the Last One who causes all things to end. ¹⁸ I am alive, even though I died once, and indeed, I am alive forever! I have power over death and I control the place of the dead.

ULB:

¹⁷ When I saw him, I fell at his feet like a dead man. He placed his right hand on me and said, "Do not be afraid. I am the first and the last, ¹⁸ and the one who lives. I was dead, but look, I live forever! And I have the keys of death and of Hades.

translationNotes

fell at his feet like a dead man

John lay down facing the ground. He was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect. (See: [Simile](#))

He placed his right hand on me

"He touched me with his right hand"

I am the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. (See: [Merism](#))

I have the keys of death and of Hades

Having the power over something is spoken of as having the keys to it. The implied information is that he can give life to those who have died and let them out of Hades. AT: "I have the power over death and over Hades" or "I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- fear, fears, afraid
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- Hades, Sheol

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 1:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ So write down what you have seen. And write down what is happening now. And write down what will happen in the future. ²⁰ The meaning of the seven stars that you saw in my right hand and of the seven golden lampstands is this: The seven stars represent the angels who watch over the seven groups of believers in Asia, and the seven lampstands represent the seven groups that are there.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Therefore write down what you have seen, what is now, and what will take place after this. ²⁰ As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The Son of Man continues to speak.

stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

lampstands

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the angels of the seven churches

Possible meanings are 1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches or 2) human messengers to the seven churches.

seven churches

This refers to seven churches that actually existed in Asia Minor at that time. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#).

translationWords

- [lampstand, lampstands](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 together form a single unit. This section is usually referred to as the “seven letters to the seven churches.” The translator may wish to set these letters apart from each other to clearly distinguish them.

Some translations indent quotations from the Old Testament. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 2:27.

Special concepts in this chapter

Poverty and wealth

This chapter has a play on the two possible meanings of being poor and rich. The Ephesians were poor financially because they did not have a lot of money. They were not poor spiritually because of the great “riches” they had in Christ. (See: [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#))

“The devil is about to”

The book of Revelation is about the things that Satan is going to do on earth. Despite this, it is ultimately about what God will do in the end to defeat Satan.

Balaam, Balak and Jezebel

These teachings of Balaam are difficult to fully understand if the books of Kings have not yet been translated. This is probably a reference to leading the people of Israel into immorality and the worship of false gods. (See: [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Some scholars take chapter 2 and 3 as a metaphor. They understand these churches to refer to types of churches or historical periods of the church. It is best to translate this as instructions to ancient churches in each of these cities. (See: [Metaphor](#))

“If you have an ear, listen to what the Spirit says to the churches.”

This is a phrase which acts as a call to repentance for those in the church. (See: [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” It is possible this is a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

“These are the words of the one”

This phrase, used to introduce these letters is probably a reference to Jesus. Each letter then describes an aspect of Jesus which is significant for the rest of the letter.

Links:

- [Revelation 02:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 2:1-2

UDB:

¹ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Ephesus: The one who holds the seven stars in his right hand, and the one who walks among the seven golden lampstands says this: ² 'I know all you have done. I know that you work hard for me. I know you are patient when you go through hard times. I also know that you cannot tolerate people who are evil, and that you question people about their faith, and you know those who claim to be apostles, but they are not.

ULB:

¹ "To the angel of the church in Ephesus write:

'The words of the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand and who walks among the seven golden lampstands, ² "I know what you have done and your hard labor and your patient endurance. I know that you cannot tolerate the evil people. I know that you have tested those who say they are apostles, but are not, and that you have found them to be false.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Ephesus.

the angel

Possible meanings are 1) a heavenly angel who protects the church or 2) a human messenger to the churches. See how you translated "angel" in [Revelation 1:20](#)

stars

These stars are symbols. They represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

lampstands

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

I know ... your hard labor and your patient endurance

"Labor" and "endurance" are abstract nouns and can be translated with verbs "work" and "endure." AT: "I know ... that you work very hard and that you endure patiently" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

but are not

“but are not apostles”

you have found them to be false

“you have recognized that those people are false apostles”

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- church, churches, Church
- Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians
- word, words
- right hand
- gold, golden
- lampstand, lampstands
- hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness
- labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers
- patient, patiently, patience, impatient
- endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- test, tests, tested
- apostle, apostles, apostleship

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:3-5

UDB:

³ I know also that you endure patiently when you suffer for believing in me and that you continue to serve me steadfastly, even when people caused you to suffer because you followed me. You have continued to serve and hold to my words even when it was difficult. You did not give up or stop, even though it has been difficult for you. ⁴ Nevertheless, you have done something wrong: You no longer love each other and me as you did when you first came to trust. You do not have the same love for me now that you had at first. ⁵ So, I tell you to remember how you used to love me. Love me again like you did at the first. If you do not, I will come to you and remove your lamp so you will no longer be my people together.

ULB:

³ I know you have patient endurance, and you have suffered much because of my name, and that you have not grown weary. ⁴ But I have against you the fact that you have left behind your first love. ⁵ Remember therefore from where you have fallen. Repent and do the things you did at first. Unless you repent, I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place.

translationNotes

because of my name

“Name” here is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. AT: “because of me” (See:) “because you believe in my name” or “because you believe in me”

you have not grown weary

Being discouraged is spoken of as being tired. AT: “you have not become discouraged” or “you have not quit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I have against you the fact that

“I disapprove of you because” or “I am angry with you because”

you have left behind your first love

To stop doing something is spoken of as leaving it behind. Love is spoken of as if it is an object that can be left behind. AT “you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from where you have fallen

No longer loving as much as they used to is spoken of as haven fallen. AT: “how much you have changed” or “how much you used to love me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Unless you repent

“If you do not repent”

remove your lampstand

The lampstands are symbols that represent the seven churches. See how you translated “lampstand” in [Revelation 1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge
- patient, patiently, patience, impatient
- endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance
- love, loves, loving, loved
- repent, repents, repented, repentance
- lampstand, lampstands

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ But you do one thing very well: Those Nicolaitans, the people who say you can worship idols and act immorally—you hate what they do, just as I hate it. ⁷ Everyone who wants to understand my message must listen carefully to the message that God’s Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together. The message is this: I will allow those who are victorious to eat fruit from the tree that gives eternal life, the tree that is in God’s garden.”

ULB:

⁶ But you have this: You hate what the Nicolaitans have done, which I also hate. ⁷ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers I will give the right to eat from the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God.“”

translationNotes**Nicolaitans**

people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Let the one who has an ear listen

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. AT: “anyone who resists evil” or “those who do not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

the paradise of God

“God’s garden.” This is a symbol for heaven.

translationWords

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:8-9

UDB:

⁸ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Smyrna: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the first, the one who began all things and I am the last, who causes all things to end. I am the one who died and became alive again. ⁹ I know about how you have suffered. I know about how you are poor and lack many things that you need (but you are really rich in the things that are eternal and that can never be taken from you). You know what it is like to have people curse you and say terrible things about you because you follow Christ. Those Jews (who are not real Jews) who curse you and say terrible things about you, they are members of the gathering of Satan, and not the gathering of God's people.

ULB:

⁸ "To the angel of the church in Smyrna write:

'The words of the one who is the first and the last, the one who was dead and who became alive again: ⁹ "I know your sufferings and your poverty, but you are rich. I know the slander of those who say they are Jews, but they are not. They are a synagogue of Satan.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Smyrna.

Smyrna

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:17](#). (See: [Merism](#))

I know your sufferings and your poverty

"Sufferings" and "poverty" can be translated as verbs. AT: "I know how you have suffered and how poor you are" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

I know the slander of those who say they are Jews

“Slander” can be translated as a verb. AT: “I know how people have slandered you—those who say they are Jews” or “I know how people have said terrible things about you—those who say they are Jews” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

but they are not

“but they are not real Jews”

a synagogue of Satan

People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)
- [slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous](#)
- [Jew, Jewish, Jews](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Do not be afraid of any of the things that you are about to suffer. The truth is that the devil is about to put some of you in prison, to put you in a difficult place where you are being tested to see what kind of faith you have. For a short period of time you will suffer. Continue to trust in me, even if they kill you because you trust in me. and I will put a wreath on your head that will be a sign that you have eternal life and that you have overcome. ¹¹ Listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit speaks to the groups of believers assembled together. All who conquer will never die a second time.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Look! The devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you will be tested, and you will suffer for ten days. Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life. ¹¹ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. The one who conquers will not be hurt by the second death.”

translationNotes

The devil is about to throw some of you into prison

“The devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison”

Be faithful until death

“Be faithful to me even if they kill you.” The use of the word “until” does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death.

the crown

“the winner’s crown.” This was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete.

the crown of life

Possible meanings are 1) “a crown that shows that I have given you eternal life” or 2) “true life as a prize like a winner’s crown” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Let the one who has an ear

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Those who do not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

will not be hurt by the second death

“will not experience the second death” or “will not die a second time”

translationWords

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:12-13

UDB:

¹² "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers in the city of Pergamum: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who has the sword with two sharp edges. ¹³ I know that you live where Satan's power is strong and his influence is everywhere. I know that you firmly believe, and you hold on to what I love and what is important to me—even when they killed my faithful servant Antipas, who had kept telling people who I am and what I did for them.

ULB:

¹² "To the angel of the church in Pergamum write:

'The words of the one who has the sword with two sharp edges: ¹³ "I know where you live, there where Satan's throne is. Yet you hold on tightly to my name. I know that you did not deny your faith in me, even in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, there where Satan lives.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Pergamum.

Pergamum

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sword with two sharp edges

This refers to a double-edged sword, which is sharpened on both sides to cut both directions. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16](#)

Satan's throne

Possible meanings are 1) Satan's power and evil influence on people, or 2) the place where Satan rules. (See: [Metonymy](#))

you hold on tightly to my name

"Name" here is a metonym for the person. Firmly believing is spoken of as holding on tightly. AT: "you firmly believe in me" (See: [Metaphor](#) and)

you did not deny your faith in me

“Faith” can be translated with the verb “believe.” AT “you continued to tell people that you believe in me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Antipas

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [faith](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ But, even so, I see some matters that are hurting your testimony and weakening your obedience. You permit some of your members to teach things like Balaam taught long ago. He taught Balak to eat food that had been offered to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people. ¹⁵ In that way, you are also permitting some of your members to practice what the Nicolaitans teach, that sexual immorality is permitted, which, of course, it is not permitted.

ULB:

¹⁴ But I have a few things against you: You have there some who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the children of Israel, so they would eat food sacrificed to idols and be sexually immoral. ¹⁵ In the same way, you even have some who hold tightly to the teaching of the Nicolaitans.

translationNotes

But I have a few things against you

"I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:4](#).

who hold tightly to the teaching of Balaam, who

Possible meanings are 1) "who teach what Balaam taught; he" or 2) "who do what Balaam taught; he." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Balak

This is the name of a king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the children of Israel

Something that leads people to sin is spoken of as a stone in the road that people stumble on. AT: "who showed Balak how to cause the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

be sexually immoral

"sin sexually" or "commit sexual sin"

Nicolaitans

This was the name for a group of people who followed the teachings of a man named Nicolaus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:6](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Balaam](#)
- [stumbling block, stumbling blocks, stone of stumbling](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Stop doing this and change your direction, or I will come to you suddenly and I will make war against them with the sword in my mouth, the word of God. ¹⁷ Listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit speaks to the groups of believers. To him who conquers, I will give the hidden manna, that will feed and strengthen you and I will also give him a white stone, on which I will engrave a new name for him, and the name I give him only he will know.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Repent, therefore! If you do not, I will quickly come to you, and I will wage war against them with the sword in my mouth. ¹⁷ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. To the one who conquers, I will give some of the hidden manna, and I will give a white stone with a new name written on the stone, a name which no one knows but the one who receives it. “”

translationNotes

Repent, therefore

“So repent”

If you do not, I

The verb can be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: “If you do not repent, I” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

wage war against them

“fight against them”

with the sword in my mouth

This refers to the sword in [Revelation 1:16](#). Although symbols in apocalyptic language are not normally to be replaced with the item they represent, translators may choose whether or not to show that this as a symbol represents God's word, as the UDB does. This symbol indicates that Christ will defeat his enemies by giving a simple command. AT: “with the sword in my mouth, which is the word of God” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Let the one who has an ear listen

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

To the one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “anyone who resists evil” or “those who do not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

translationWords

- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [manna](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled together in the city of Thyatira: 'I, the Son of God, whose eyes shine like a flame of fire and whose feet shine like gleaming bronze, am saying these things to you. ¹⁹ I know all the good things that you do. I know that you love me and each other, and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties. I know that you are doing these things more now than you did in the past.

ULB:

¹⁸ "To the angel of the church in Thyatira write:

"These are the words of the Son of God, who has eyes like a flame of fire and feet like polished bronze: ¹⁹ "I know what you have done: your love and faith and service and your patient endurance. I know that what you have done recently is more than you did at first.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Thyatira.

Thyatira

This is the name of a city in a part of western Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

who has eyes like a flame of fire

His eyes are describes as being full of light like a flame of fire. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:14](#). AT: "whose eyes glow like a flame of fire" (See: [Simile](#))

feet like polished bronze

Bronze is polished to make it shine and reflect light. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:15](#). AT: "whose feet are very shiny like polished bronze" (See: [Simile](#))

your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

The abstract nouns “love,” “faith,” “service,” and “endurance” can be translated with verbs. AT: “How you have loved, trusted, served, and endured patiently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your love and faith and service and your patient endurance

The implied objects of these verbs can be stated clearly. AT: “How you have loved me and others, trusted me, served me and others, and endured troubles patiently” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [Son of God, Son](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [faith](#)
- [patient, patiently, patience, impatient](#)
- [endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Nevertheless, you have done something wrong: You tolerate that woman among your people who is like that wicked Queen Jezebel who lived long ago. She says that she is a prophetess. However, by what she teaches, she is deceiving my servants. She is urging them to commit sexual immorality and to eat food that they have offered to idols. ²¹ Although I gave her time to turn away from her sexual immorality and pagan practices, she did not want to stop.

ULB:

²⁰ But I have this against you: You tolerate the woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess. By her teaching she deceives my servants to commit sexual immorality and to eat food sacrificed to idols. ²¹ I gave her time to repent, but she is not willing to repent of her immorality.

translationNotes**But I have this against you**

“But I disapprove of some of the things you are doing” or “But I am angry with you because of something you are doing.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:4](#).

the woman Jezebel, who

Jesus spoke of a certain woman in their church as if she were Queen Jezebel, because she did the same kinds of sinful things that Queen Jezebel had done long before that time. AT: “the woman who is just like Jezebel and” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I gave her time to repent

“I gave her opportunity to repent” or “I waited for her to repent”

translationWords

- [Jezebel](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:22-23

UDB:

²² As a result, I will cause her to become very ill. I will also cause those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly, if they do not stop doing what she does. ²³ Some have become like her children by accepting what she teaches, and I will certainly kill them. Then all the groups of believers will learn that I am the one who finds out what everyone thinks and desires. I will reward each of you according to what you have done.

ULB:

²² Look! I will throw her onto a sickbed, and those who commit adultery with her into great suffering, unless they repent of her deeds. ²³ I will strike her children dead, and all the churches will know that I am the one who searches thoughts and hearts. I will give to each one of you according to your deeds.

translationNotes

I will throw her onto a sickbed ... into great suffering

Her having to lie in bed would be the result of Jesus making her very sick. AT: “I will make her lie sick in bed ... I will make suffer greatly” or “I will make her very sick ... I will make suffer greatly” (See: [Metonymy](#))

those who commit adultery with her into great suffering

Jesus speaks of causing people to suffer as throwing them into suffering. AT: “I will make those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

commit adultery

“practice adultery”

unless they repent of her deeds

This implies that they have participated with her in her wicked behavior. By repenting of her deeds, they also repent of participating in her behavior. AT: “if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does” or “if they do not repent of participating in her deeds” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I will strike her children dead

“I will kill her children”

her children

Jesus spoke of her followers as if they were her children. AT: 'her followers" or "the people who do what she teaches" (See: [Metaphor](#))

thoughts and hearts

The term "heart" a metonym that represents feelings and desires. AT: "what people think and want" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will give to each one of you

This is an expression about punishment and reward. AT: "I will punish or reward each one of you" (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses](#)
- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ But I have something good to say about the rest of you believers in the city of Thyatira. It is good that you do not accept these wrong things. It is good that you reject what those teachers call their “secret practices” that Satan taught them. I will not burden you with any other commands. ²⁵ Just keep believing firmly in me and obey me until I come.

ULB:

²⁴ But to the rest of you in Thyatira, to everyone who does not hold this teaching, and does not know what some call the deep things of Satan—to you I say, ‘I do not put any other burden on you.’
²⁵ In any case, you must hold on tightly until I come.

translationNotes**everyone who does not hold this teaching**

Believing a teaching is spoken of as holding the teaching. AT: “everyone who does not believe this teaching” (See: [Metaphor](#))

does not hold this teaching

The noun “teaching” can be translated as a verb. AT: “does not hold to what she teaches” or “does not believe what she teaches”

what some call the deep things of Satan

Possible meanings are 1) those who called them the deep things understood that they were from Satan or 2) some people called them the deep things, but Jesus was saying that those things were really from Satan. AT: “the things of Satan, what some call the deep things”

the deep things of Satan

“the deep things that Satan teaches”

deep things

Secret things are spoken of as if they were deep. AT: “secret things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 2:26-29

UDB:

²⁶ As for those who conquer Satan and who keep on doing what I command until they die, I will give them my authority over all people. ²⁷ They will control them as if they were striking them with an iron rod. They will destroy evildoers just as people shatter clay pots. ²⁸ I do all of this with the authority my Father gave me, and I will give the morning star to those who rule with me so that we may have great joy in our victory. ²⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

²⁶ The one who conquers and who does what I have done until the end, to him I will give authority over the nations.

²⁷ 'He will rule them with an iron rod,

like clay jars he will break them into pieces.'

²⁸ Just as I have received from my Father, I will also give him the morning star. ²⁹ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches.“”

translationNotes

The one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “The person who does not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

He will rule ... break them into pieces

This is a prophecy from the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applied it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.

He will rule them with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. AT: “He will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick” (See: [Metaphor](#))

like clay jars he will break them into pieces

Breaking them to pieces is an image that represents either 1) destroying evildoers or 2) defeating enemies. AT: “He will defeat his enemies completely as if breaking clay jars into pieces” (See: [Simile](#))

Just as I have received from my Father

Some languages may need to tell what was received. Possible meanings are 1) “Just as I have received authority from my Father” or 2) “Just as I have received the morning star from my Father.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

I will also give him

Here “him” refers to the one who conquers.

morning star

This is a bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Let the one who has an ear listen

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [authority, authorities](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [rod, rods](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 2 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 03 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 2 and 3 form a single unit. This section is usually referred to as the “seven letters to the seven churches.” The translator may wish to set these letters apart from each other to clearly distinguish them from each other.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:7.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven spirits of God

The exact meaning of this phrase is unclear. It is possibly a reference to the Holy Spirit with the number seven symbolizing “completeness.” It may also be a reference to the seven spirits surrounding the throne of God. It should be unnecessary to specifically define it in translation.

Seven stars

These are probably a reference to the leaders of the churches. (See: [Revelation 1:20](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Some scholars take chapter 2 and 3 as a metaphor. They understand these churches to refer to types of churches or historical periods of the church. It is best to translate this as instructions to ancient churches in each of these cities. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The phrase “Look, I stand at the door and knock” is another extended metaphor describing Jesus’ readiness and willingness to accept anyone who repents and believes in him. (See: [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#) and [believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief](#))

“If you have an ear, listen to what the Spirit says to the churches.”

This is a phrase which acts as a call to repentance for those in the church.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angels of the seven churches”

The Greek word translated as “angels” can also be translated as “messengers.” This is possibly a reference to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches.

Links:

- **Revelation 03:01 Notes**

Revelation 3:1-2

UDB:

¹ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Sardis. 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who has the seven spirits of God and the seven stars. I know everything that you have done. You appear to be alive, but you are dead. ² Be alert! Do more work for me, or what you have already done will become worthless. You must do this because my God knows that you have not done enough.

ULB:

¹ "To the angel of the church in Sardis write:

"The words of the one who holds the seven spirits of God and the seven stars. "I know what you have done. You have a reputation that you are alive, but you are dead. ² Wake up and strengthen what remains, but is about to die, because I have not found your deeds complete in the sight of my God.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Sardis.

Sardis

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the seven spirits

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The "seven spirits" refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the seven stars

These stars are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

alive ... dead

Obeying and honoring God is spoken of as being alive; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Wake up and strengthen what remains, but is about to die

The good deeds done by the believers in Sardis are spoken of as if they were alive but in danger of dying. AT: “Wake up and complete the work that remains, or what you have done will become worthless” or “Wake up. If you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Wake up

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. AT: “Be alert” or “Be careful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [God](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:3-4

UDB:

³ So then, keep remembering God's message and the truth that you accepted when you heard it. Always obey it and turn away from your sinful behavior. If you do not do this, I will come to you when you are not expecting me, as a thief comes. You will never know at what time I will come to judge you. ⁴ Nevertheless, you have a few believers there in the city of Sardis who have not been doing what is wrong. It is as though they have not dirtied their garments. As a result, because they are worthy to live with me, they will live with me and will be pure in every way, like people who are dressed in pure white clothing.

ULB:

³ Remember, therefore, what you have received and heard. Obey it, and repent. But if you do not wake up, I will come as a thief, and you will not know what hour I will come against you. ⁴ But there are a few names of the people in Sardis who did not make their clothes dirty. They will walk with me, dressed in white, for they are worthy.

translationNotes

what you have received and heard

This refers to God's word, which they believed. AT: "God's word that you heard and the truth that you believed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if you do not wake up

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. See how you translated "wake up" on [Revelation 3:2](#). AT: "If you are not alert" or "If you are not careful" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will come as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected. (See: [Simile](#))

a few names of the people

This refers to the people themselves. AT: "a few people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

did not make their clothes dirty

Jesus speaks of sin in a person's life as if it were dirty clothes. AT: "have not made their lives sinful like dirty clothes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will walk with me

People commonly spoke of living as “walking.” AT: “will live with me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

dressed in white

White clothes represent a pure life without sin. AT: “and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing](#)
- [hour, hours](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Those who conquer Satan I will dress in these same white garments. I will never erase their names from the Book of Life that contains the names of the people who have eternal life. Instead, I will acknowledge in the presence of my Father and his angels that they belong to me . ⁶ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God’s Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

⁵ The one who conquers will be clothed in white garments, and I will never wipe his name out of the Book of Life, and I will speak his name before my Father, and before his angels. ⁶ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches.“”

translationNotes

The one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Anyone who does not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

will be clothed in white garments

This can be translated with an active verb. AT: “will wear white garments” or “I will give white clothes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I will speak his name

He would not simply say the person’s name, but announce that the person belongs to him. AT: “I will announce that he belongs to me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

before my Father

“in the presence of my Father”

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Let the one who has an ear listen

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#).

AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Philadelphia: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the One who is holy, the True One. Just as King David had authority to allow people to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people to enter my kingdom. I am the one who opens doors so that no one can close them and the one who closes doors so that no one can open them.' ⁸ I know everything you have done. Be aware that I have opened a door for you that no one can close. I know that although you have little power, you have obeyed what I say, and you have not denied that you believe in me.

ULB:

⁷ "To the angel of the church in Philadelphia write:

'The words of the one who is holy and true—

he holds the key of David,

he opens and no one shuts,

he shuts and no one can open.

⁸ "I know what you have done. Look, I have put before you an open door that no one can shut. I know that you have little strength, yet you have obeyed my word and have not denied my name.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Philadelphia.

Philadelphia

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

key of David

Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's key. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

he opens and no one shuts

"he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"

he shuts and no one can open

“he closes the door and no one can open it”

I have put before you an open door

“I have opened a door for you”

you have obeyed my word

“word” here is a metonym for message. AT: “you have followed by teachings” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my name

The word “name” is often used to refer to the person who has that name. AT: “me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [David](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Be careful! I am aware that some of your people meet together with those who follow Satan. They claim to be Jews, but I know that they are not true Jews. They are lying. I will cause them to come to you and to bow down humbly at your feet and to acknowledge that I love you.

¹⁰ Because you have obeyed me when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently, I will keep you safe from those who will try to make you disobey me. They will soon do this to everyone in the entire world. ¹¹ I am coming soon. So continue to do what I have told you, in order that no one may cause you to lose your reward that God has reserved for you.

ULB:

⁹ Look! Those who belong to the synagogue of Satan who say they are Jews but are not, but they are liars—I will make them come and bow down before your feet, and they will come to know that I loved you. ¹⁰ Since you have kept my command to endure patiently, I will also keep you from the hour of testing that is coming on the whole world, to test those who live on the earth. ¹¹ I am coming soon. Hold to what you have so no one can take away your crown.

translationNotes**synagogue of Satan**

People who gather to obey or honor Satan are spoken of as if they were in a synagogue, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:9](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

bow down

This is a sign of submission, not worship. AT: “bow down in submission” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

before your feet

Here the word “feet” represent the person before whom these people bow down. AT: “before you” or “to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they will come to know

“they will learn” or “they will admit”

will also keep you from the hour of testing

“will also prevent the hour of testing from happening to you” or “will protect you so you do not enter the hour of testing”

hour of testing

“time of testing.” This probably means “the time when people try to make you disobey me.”

is coming

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am coming soon

It is understood that he is coming in order to judge. AT: “I am coming to judge soon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Hold to what you have

Continuing to believe firmly in Christ is spoken of as if it were holding something tightly. AT: “Continue to believe firmly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

crown

A crown was a wreath, originally of olive branches or laurel leaves, that was put on the head of a victorious athlete. Here “crown” stands for a reward. See how you translated “crown” in [Revelation 2:10](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [synagogue](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [Jew, Jewish, Jews](#)
- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance](#)
- [patient, patiently, patience, impatient](#)
- [hour, hours](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:12-13

UDB:

¹² I will make those who conquer Satan secure. They will be firm like the pillars in the temple of my God, and they will remain there forever. I will mark them with the name of my God, showing that they belong to him. I will also mark them with the name of the city of my God, the New Jerusalem, the city that will descend out of heaven from my God. I will also mark them with my new name, showing that they belong to me. ¹³ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together."

ULB:

¹² The one who conquers, I will make like a pillar in the temple of my God. Never again will he go out of it, and I will write on him the name of my God, the name of the city of my God (the new Jerusalem, that comes down out of heaven from my God), and my new name. ¹³ Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches.""

translationNotes

The one who conquers, I will make like a pillar in the temple of my God

Here "The one who conquers" refers to anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). The "pillar" represents an important and permanent part of God's kingdom. AT: "Anyone who resists evil to be strong like a pillar in the temple of my God" or "Those who do not agree to do evil to be strong like a pillar in the temple of my God" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Let the one who has an ear

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing, listen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [temple](#)
- [God](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ "Write this message to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Laodicea: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who guarantees all of God's promises. I am the one who testifies about God reliably and accurately. I am the ruler over all of God's creation. ¹⁵ I know everything that you have done: You do not deny that you trust in me, but you do not love me much. You are like water that is neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! ¹⁶ Because you were not hot and also you were not cold, I am about to reject you, as if I were spitting lukewarm water out of my mouth.

ULB:

¹⁴ "To the angel of the church in Laodicea write:

'The words of the Amen, the reliable and true witness, the ruler over God's creation. ¹⁵ "I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! ¹⁶ So, because you are lukewarm—neither hot nor cold—I am about to vomit you out of my mouth.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is the beginning of the Son of Man's message to the angel of the church in Laodicea.

Laodicea

This is the name of a city in the western part of Asia that today is modern Turkey. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The words of the Amen

Here "the Amen" is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.

the ruler over God's creation

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who rules over everything that God created" or 2) "the one through whom God created everything."

you are neither cold nor hot

"Cold" and hot" represent two extremes of spiritual interest or love for God. To be "cold" is to be completely against God, and to be "hot" is to be zealous to serve him. AT: "you are like water that is neither cold nor hot" (See: [Metaphor](#))

lukewarm

“slightly warm.” This describes someone who has only a small amount of spiritual interest or conviction. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am about to vomit you out of my mouth

Rejecting them is spoken of as vomiting them out of the mouth. AT: “I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm water” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [church, churches, Church](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled](#)
- [God](#)
- [create, creates, created, creation, creator](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ You are saying, ‘I am rich and have acquired a lot of wealth. I lack nothing!’ But you do not realize that you are lacking in many ways. You are like people who are very wretched and pitiful, poor, blind, and naked. ¹⁸ I advise you to obtain from me all that you need, as though you were buying from me pure gold so that you may be truly rich. Let me make you righteous, as though you were buying from me white garments so that you might wear clothes instead of being naked and ashamed. Let me help you to understand the truth, as though you were buying from me eye salve to put on sick eyes.

ULB:

¹⁷ For you say, ‘I am rich, I have had many material possessions, and I need nothing.’ But you do not know that you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked. ¹⁸ Listen to my advice: Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see.

translationNotes**you are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked**

Jesus speaks of their spiritual condition as if he were speaking about their physical condition. AT: “You are like people who are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Buy from me gold refined by fire

Gold that is refined in fire is pure and very valuable. Here the salvation that Jesus offers mankind is spoken of as if it were gold. AT: “Receive from me what is really most valuable, as if it were gold refined by fire” (See: [Metaphor](#))

may become rich

This refers to spiritual wealth, living a life that is most valuable in God’s sight. AT: “may be spiritually rich” or “may live a most valuable life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

brilliant white garments

White garments represent righteousness. AT: “righteousness, like white garments” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so you may clothe yourself

“Clothe yourself” here is a metaphor for receiving from Christ. AT: “receive for yourself” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so you will see

Seeing stands for understanding the truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- gold, golden
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
- anoint, anointed, anointing

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Since I rebuke and correct all those whom I love, turn away with all your heart from your sinful behavior. ²⁰ I am here! I am calling each one, and I am standing and waiting at your door and knocking on the door. If you hear my voice and you open the door, I will come in and we will eat together as friends.

ULB:

¹⁹ I train everyone whom I love, and I teach them how they should live. Therefore, be earnest and repent. ²⁰ Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into his home and will eat with him, and he with me.

translationNotes

be earnest and repent

“be serious and repent”

I am standing at the door and am knocking

Jesus speaks about wanting people to relate to him as if he wanted them to invite him into their home. AT: “I am like one standing at the door and knocking” (See: [Metaphor](#))

am knocking

When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they knock on the door. AT: “I want you to let me come inside” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

hears my voice

The phrase “my voice” refers to Christ speaking. AT: “hears me speak” or “hears me call” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will come into his home

Some languages might prefer the verb “go” here. AT: “I will go in to his home” (See: [Go and Come](#))

and will eat with him

This represents being together as friends. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 3:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ I will permit everyone who conquers Satan to sit and rule with me on my throne, just as I conquered Satan and now sit and rule with my Father on his throne. ²² Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that God's Spirit is saying to the groups of believers assembled together.”

ULB:

²¹ The one who conquers, I will give him the right to sit down with me on my throne, just as I also conquered and sat down with my Father on his throne. ²² Let the one who has an ear listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. “”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

This is the end of the Son of Man's messages to the angels of the seven churches.

The one who conquers

This refers anyone who conquers. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Anyone who resists evil” or “Anyone who does not agree to do evil” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

to sit down with me on my throne

To sit on a throne means to rule. AT: “to rule with me” or “to sit down on my throne and rule with me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Let the one who has an ear listen

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing, listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- throne, thrones, enthroned
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- church, churches, Church

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 04 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:8, 11.

This chapter begins the remainder of the book of Revelation and it is markedly different than the first three chapters. It now describes an unfolding image John sees in his vision.

Special concepts in this chapter

Glory

The whole of this chapter is an image describing a scene in heaven where everything constantly gives glory to God. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [glorifies](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The description of the person sitting on the throne contains many similes. Many cultures do not have these specific gem stones and it is possible that these have symbolic significance. (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Difficult images

There are many images that may appear difficult or impossible. For example, bolts of lightning coming from the throne, lamps that are the seven spirits of God or a sea in front of the throne. It is best to allow these difficulties to remain in the translation. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 04:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ After these things I, John, saw in the vision that there was a door open in heaven. The one whose voice was like a loud trumpet, the one who had spoken to me previously, said to me, “Come up here! I will show you events that must happen later.” ² Immediately I experienced that God’s Spirit was specially controlling me. There was a throne there in heaven, and on the throne someone was sitting and ruling. ³ His appearance shone like a brilliant crystalline jasper jewel and like a brilliant red carnelian jewel. Around the throne was a rainbow that shone like a brilliant green emerald jewel.

ULB:

¹ After these things I looked, and I saw an open door in heaven. The first voice that I had heard was speaking to me like a trumpet, saying, “Come up here, and I will show you what must happen after these things.” ² At once I was in the Spirit, and I saw there was a throne placed in heaven, with someone sitting on it. ³ The one who was sitting on it looked like jasper and carnelian. There was a rainbow around the throne. The rainbow looked like an emerald.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe his vision of the throne of God.

After these things

“After I had just seen these things” ([Revelation 2:1-3:22](#))

an open door in heaven

This expression stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision. (See: [Metaphor](#))

speaking to me like a trumpet

How the voice was like a trumpet can be stated clearly. AT: “speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet” (See: [Simile](#))

trumpet

This refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:10](#).

I was in the Spirit

John speaks of being influenced by God's Spirit as if he were in the Spirit. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:10](#). AT: "I was influenced by the Spirit" or "The Spirit influenced me" (See: [Idiom](#))

jasper and carnelian

valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

emerald

a green, valuable stone (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 4:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Around the throne there were twenty-four other thrones. On these thrones twenty-four elders were sitting. They were wearing pure white garments and had golden crowns on their heads. ⁵ From the throne there came lightning and rumblings and thundering. In front of the throne were burning seven torches, which represent the seven spirits of God.

ULB:

⁴ Around the throne were twenty-four thrones, and seated on the thrones were twenty-four elders, dressed with white garments, with golden crowns on their heads. ⁵ From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings, and crashes of thunder. Seven lamps were burning in front of the throne, lamps that were the seven spirits of God.

translationNotes**twenty-four elders**

“24 elders” (See: [Numbers](#))

golden crowns

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Such crowns, made of leaves, were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

flashes of lightning

Use your language’s way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears.

rumblings, and crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language’s way of describing the sound of thunder.

seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The “seven spirits” refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- throne, thrones, enthroned
- elder, elders
- gold, golden
- crown, crowns, crowned
- lamp, lamps
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 4:6

UDB:

⁶ In front of the throne there was also what looked like a sea made of glass. It was clear, like crystal. On each of the four sides of the throne there was a living creature. Each one was covered with eyes in front and behind.

ULB:

⁶ Before the throne was a sea of glass, like crystal. In the middle of the throne and around the throne were four living creatures, full of eyes, front and back.

translationNotes

a sea of glass

How it was like glass or a sea can be stated clearly. Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. AT: “a sea that was as smooth as glass” or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. AT: “glass that was spread out like a sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))

like crystal

How it was like crystal can be stated clearly. AT: “clear as crystal” (See: [Simile](#))

In the middle of the throne and around the throne

“Immediately around the throne” or “Close to the throne and around it”

four living creatures

“four living beings” or “four living things”

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 4:7**UDB:**

⁷⁻⁸ The first living creature was like a lion. The second living creature was like an ox. The third living creature had a face like a man's face. The fourth living creature was like an eagle that was flying. Each of the four living creatures had six wings. These wings were covered with eyes both top and bottom. Day and night they constantly say:

”Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, who rules over all.

He is the one who has always existed,

who exists now, and who will always exist.”

ULB:

⁷ The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle. ⁸ The four living creatures each had six wings, full of eyes on top and underneath. Night and day they do not stop saying,

”Holy, holy, holy

is the Lord God Almighty

who was, and who is, and who is to come.”

translationNotes

The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like a calf, the third living creature had a face like a man, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle

How the head of each living creature appeared to John is expressed as a comparison with something more familiar. (See: [Simile](#))

living creature

“living being” or “living thing.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:6](#)

full of eyes on top and underneath

The top and bottom of each wing was covered with eyes.

who is to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike](#)
- [lions, lion, lioness, lionesses](#)
- [cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)
- [eagle, eagles](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [Almighty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 4:9-11**UDB:**

⁹⁻¹⁰ The living creatures praise, honor, and thank the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever. Whenever they do that, the twenty-four elders lie down on the ground before the one who sits on the throne. They worship him, the one who lives forever and ever. They lay their crowns in front of the throne and say:

¹¹ "Our Lord and God,
 you are worthy that all beings should praise you;
 you are worthy that all beings honor you; and
 you are worthy that all beings acknowledge
 that you are the powerful one.
 Because you alone created all things.
 Moreover, because you intended that they should exist,
 you created them; as a result, they exist."

ULB:

⁹ Whenever the living creatures gave glory, honor, and thanks to the one who was seated on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever, ¹⁰ the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before the one seated on the throne. They bowed down to the one living forever and ever, and they threw down their crowns before the throne, saying,

¹¹ "Worthy are you, our Lord and our God,
 to receive glory and honor and power,
 for you created all things,
 and by your will they existed and were created."

translationNotes**the one who was seated on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever**

This is one person. The one who was seated on the throne lives forever and ever.

forever and ever

These two words mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. AT: "for all eternity"
 (See: [Doublet](#))

twenty-four elders

“24 elders.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

prostrated themselves

They lay down facing the ground.

they threw down their crowns before the throne

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads. The elders were showing that they were submitting to God’s authority to rule. AT: “they threw down their crowns before the throne to show that they were submitting to him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

our Lord and our God

“our Lord and God.” This is one person, the one who was sitting on the throne.

to receive glory and honor and power

These are things that God always has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. AT: “to be praised for your glory, honor, and power” or “for everyone to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and powerful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [elder, elders](#)
- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [God](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [create, creates, created, creation, creator](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 05 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:8, 11.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sealed scroll

A sealed scroll contains a written message hidden and waiting to be read. The scroll can only be read by the person with the authority to open it.

Twenty-four elders

This is probably a reference to church leaders, but the identity of the twenty-four elders is uncertain. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Christian prayers

The prayers of Christians are connected with incense. Christian prayers have a good smell to God. He is pleased when Christians pray.

Seven spirits of God

The exact meaning of this phrase is unclear. It is possibly a symbolic reference to the Holy Spirit with the number seven symbolizing “completeness.” It may also not be symbolic, and reference seven spirits surrounding the throne of God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The “Lion of the tribe of Judah” and the “Root of David” are references to Jesus. They are metaphors and they function as titles for Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 05:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 5:1-2**UDB:**

¹ I saw that there was a scroll in the right hand of the one who was sitting on the throne. The scroll was written on its outside as well as on its inside, and it was sealed with seven seals. ² I saw a strong angel who was announcing in a loud voice, “The person who is worthy to break the seals of the scroll and then to open it should come and do it!”

ULB:

¹ Then I saw in the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne a scroll written on the front and on the back, sealed with seven seals. ² I saw a mighty angel proclaiming with a loud voice, “Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John continues to describe what he saw in his vision of the throne of God.

Then I saw

“After I saw those things, I saw”

the one who was seated on the throne

This is the same “one” as in [Revelation 4:2-3](#).

a scroll written on the front and on the back

“a scroll with writing on the front and the back”

sealed with seven seals

“and it had seven seals keeping it closed”

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

The person would need to break the seals in order to open the scroll. AT: “Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?” (See: [Order of Events](#))

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?

This can be translated as a command: “The one who is worthy to do this should come to break the seals and open the scroll!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [right hand](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [scroll, scrolls](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:3-5

UDB:

³ But no created being in heaven, on the earth, or under it was able to open the scroll and see what was written on it. ⁴ I wept loudly because there was no one worthy to do that. ⁵ But one of the elders said to me, “Do not cry any longer! Look, the one who is called the Lion from the tribe of Judah, who is the descendant and heir of King David, has overcome Satan! As a result, he is worthy to break the seven seals on the scroll and to open it!”

ULB:

³ No one in heaven or on the earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to read it. ⁴ I wept bitterly because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it. ⁵ But one of the elders said to me, “Do not weep. Look! The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals.”

translationNotes

in heaven or on the earth or under the earth

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. AT: “anywhere in heaven or on the earth or under the earth” (See: [Merism](#))

Look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

The Lion of the tribe of Judah

This is a title for the man from the tribe of Judah that God had promised would be the great king. AT: “The one who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah” or “The king who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah”

The Lion

The king is spoken of as if he were a lion because a lion is very strong. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Root of David

This is a title for the descendant of David that God had promised would be the great king. AT: “the one who is called the Root of David”

the Root of David

The descendant is spoken of as if David's family were a tree and he were a root of that tree. AT: "the Descendant of David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [scroll, scrolls](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [elder, elders](#)
- [lions, lion, lioness, lionesses](#)
- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then I saw a Lamb standing there in the midst of the four living creatures and the elders around the throne. Although he was alive, he had marks that showed that someone had killed him. He had seven horns, and he had seven eyes that are the seven spirits of God that God sends out over all the earth. ⁷ The Lamb came and took the scroll from the right hand of the one sitting on the throne.

ULB:

⁶ I saw a Lamb standing in the middle of the throne area and among the four living creatures and among the elders. He looked as though he had been killed. He had seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth. ⁷ He went and took hold of the scroll out of the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne.

translationNotes

General Information:

The Lamb appears in the throne room. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

a Lamb

A “lamb” is a young sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

seven spirits of God

The number seven is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The “seven spirits” refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

sent out into all the earth

This can be translated with an active verb. AT: “which God sent out over all the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He went

He approached the throne. Some languages would use the verb “come.” AT: “He came” (See: [Go and Come](#))

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:8**UDB:**

⁸ When he took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before him. They each had a harp, and they had golden bowls full of incense that represents the prayers of God's people.

ULB:

⁸ When the Lamb took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves before him. Each of them had a harp and a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of the believers.

translationNotes**the Lamb**

This is a young male sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

twenty-four elders

"24 elders." See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

prostrated themselves

"lay down on the ground." Their faces were toward the ground.

Each of them

Possible meanings are 1) "each of the elders and living creatures" or 2) "each of the elders."

a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of the believers

The incense here is a symbol for the believers' prayers to God. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
-

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The living creatures and the elders sang a new song. They sang:

”You are worthy to receive the scroll and to open its seals
because you were killed, and because you redeemed
people for God from every tribe, language, people,
and people group with your blood when you died.

¹⁰ You have caused them to become a people over whom our God rules
and to become priests who serve him; they will rule on the earth.”

ULB:

⁹ They sang a new song:

”You are worthy to take the scroll
and to open its seals.

For you were slaughtered, and with your blood you purchased people for God
from every tribe, language, people, and nation.

¹⁰ You made them a kingdom and priests to serve our God,
and they will reign on the earth.”

translationNotes**For you were slaughtered**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “For they slaughtered you” or “For people killed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

slaughtered

If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.

with your blood

Since blood represents a person’s life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means “by your death” or “by dying.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you purchased people for God

“you bought people so that they could belong to God” or “you paid the price so that people could belong to God”

from every tribe, language, people, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included.

translationWords

- [blood](#)
- [God](#)
- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ As I continued to look, I heard the voices of many angels around the throne and around the living creatures and the elders. There were millions of them, a crowd so large that no one could count them. ¹² They were singing in a loud voice:

”The Lamb whom they killed—

it is right that we should praise his power, wealth, wisdom, and strength.

It is right that all created things should honor him and praise him!”

ULB:

¹¹ Then I looked and heard the sound of many angels who encircled the throne and the living creatures and the elders. Their total number was ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands. ¹² They said in a loud voice,

“Worthy is the Lamb who has been slaughtered to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise.”

translationNotes**ten thousands of ten thousands and thousands of thousands**

Use an expression in your language that shows that it is a huge number. AT: “millions” or “too many thousands to count” (See: [Numbers](#))

Worthy is the Lamb who has been slaughtered

“The Lamb who has been slaughtered is worthy”

to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise

These are all things that the Lamb has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns. See how you translated a similar sentence in [Revelation 4:11](#). AT: “for everyone to honor, glorify, and praise him because he is powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [power, powers](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [honor, honors](#)

- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 5:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ And I heard every creature in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea say,
 ”We must forever praise, honor, and glorify the one who sits on the throne
 and the lamb.

May they reign with complete power forever!”

¹⁴ The four living creatures said, “May it be so!” Then the elders prostrated themselves on the ground and worshiped God and the lamb.

ULB:

¹³ I heard every created thing that was in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea—everything in them—saying,

“To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise, honor, glory, and the power to rule, forever and ever.”

¹⁴ The four living creatures said, “Amen!” and the elders prostrated themselves and worshiped. ^[1]

5:14 ^[1]Some older versions read, *the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever.*

translationNotes**in heaven and on the earth and under the earth**

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:3](#). (See: [Merism](#))

To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be

“May he who sits on the throne and the Lamb have”

translationWords

- create, creates, created, creation, creator
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [amen, truly](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 06 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The image of the wrath of God in this chapter is intended to produce fear in those who hear these words. (See: [fear](#), [fears](#), [afraid](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven Seals

There is disagreement over how these seals are attached to the scroll. It would be logical if they were all side-by-side but the scroll would only have revealed its contents after the last seal is broken. This is not how this chapter describes the scroll because each seal reveals a judgment. It is also commonly believed that the absent seventh seal uncovers the seven trumpet judgments. (See: [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Price Increases

The prices of some things people will suddenly increase. People will not be able to afford the things they need to live. This is usually called “inflation.”

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This is a reference to Jesus. In this chapter, it also functions as a title for Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Similes

The author uses many different similes. This is because he is attempting to describe the image he sees in the vision. Therefore, he compares the images in this vision to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 06:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 6:1-2

UDB:

¹ I saw the Lamb open the first of the seven seals of the scroll. Then one of the four living creatures said in a voice as loud as thunder, "Come!" ² and a white horse appeared. There was someone riding it, and he had a bow and arrows. God gave him a wreath of leaves to wear on his head to show that he was to conquer evil. He went out to continue to do battle and to win.

ULB:

¹ I looked when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures say in a voice that sounded like thunder, "Come!" ² I looked and there was a white horse. Its rider held a bow, and he was given a crown. He came out as a conqueror in order to conquer.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the events that happened before the throne of God. The Lamb begins to open the seals on the scroll.

Come!

This is a command to one person, apparently the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.

he was given a crown

This kind of crown was a likeness of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, probably hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads. This can be translated with an active verb. AT: "he received a crown" or "God gave him a crown (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a crown

This was a wreath of olive branches or of laurel leaves like the wreaths that winning athletes received in contests at the time of John.

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- creature, creatures
- voice, voices
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- crown, crowns, crowned

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:3-4**UDB:**

³ Then the one looking like a Lamb opened the second seal, and I heard the second living creature say, “Come!” ⁴ When he said that, a red horse appeared. There was also someone riding it, and God had given him the power to cause people to no longer live peacefully, but instead to kill each other. For this purpose he carried a large sword.

ULB:

³ When the Lamb opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature say, “Come!” ⁴ Then another horse came out—fiery red. To its rider was given permission to take peace away from the earth, so that its people would slaughter one another. This rider was given a huge sword.

translationNotes**the second seal**

“the next seal” or “seal number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the second living creature

“the next living creature” or “living creature number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

came out—fiery red

This can be stated as a second sentence. AT: “came out. It was red like fire” or “came out. It was bright red”

To its rider was given permission

This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “God gave permission to its rider” or “Its rider received person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This rider was given a huge sword

This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “This rider received a huge sword” or “God gave this rider a huge sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

huge

“very large” or “great”

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then the Lamb opened the third seal, and I heard the third living creature say, “Come!” This time, I saw a black horse appear. There was someone riding it, and he had a pair of balance scales in his hand. ⁶ Then I heard a voice that sounded like it was coming from among the four living creatures. It said to the person on the horse, “Make it happen that one liter of wheat will cost so much that a man must work a whole day to earn enough money to buy it. Also make it happen that three liters of barley will sell for the same price. But do not reduce the supply of olive oil or wine.”

ULB:

⁵ When the Lamb opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature say, “Come!” I saw a black horse, and its rider held a pair of scales in his hand. ⁶ I heard what seemed to be a voice among the four living creatures say, “A choenix of wheat for one denarius, and three choenices of barley for a denarius. But do not harm the oil and the wine.”

translationNotes

the third seal

“the next seal” or “seal number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the third living creature

“the next living creature” or “living creature number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

a pair of scales

a tool used for weighing things

A choenix of wheat for one denarius

Some languages might want a verb such as “cost” or “buy” in the sentence. There was very little wheat for all the people, so its price was very high. AT: “A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius” or “Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius”

A choenix of wheat ... three choenices of barley

a “choenix” was a specific measure that was about one liter. The plural of “choenix” is “choenices.” AT: “one liter of wheat ... three liters of barley” or “one bowl of wheat ... three bowls of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

one denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages. AT: "one silver coin" or "the pay for one day of work" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

But do not harm the oil and the wine

If the oil and wine were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.

the oil and the wine

These expressions probably stand for the olive oil harvest and the grape harvest. (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [wheat](#)
- [barley](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Then the Lamb opened the fourth seal, and I heard the fourth living creature say, “Come!” ⁸ This time I saw a pale horse appear. Someone was riding it; his name was “The one who causes people to die.” Someone else was following him; this person’s name was “The place where dead people go.” God gave these two persons power to kill one-fourth of all people on earth. They could kill them with weapons, or with famine, or with sickness, or with wild animals.

ULB:

⁷ When the Lamb opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, “Come!”
⁸ Then I saw a pale horse. The rider on it was named Death, and Hades was following him. They were given authority over one-fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword, with famine and disease, and with the wild animals of the earth.

translationNotes**the fourth seal**

“the next seal” or “seal number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the fourth living creature

“the next living creature” or “living creature number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

pale

“grey.” This is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death.

one-fourth of the earth

Here “the earth” represents the people of the earth. AT: “one-fourth of the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Fractions](#))

the sword

A sword is a weapon, and here it represents war. (See: [Metonymy](#))

with the wild animals of the earth

This means that Death and Hades would cause the wild animals to attack and kill people.

translationWords

- [name, names, named](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [famine, famines](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Then the Lamb opened the fifth seal, and I saw under the altar in heaven the spirits of God’s servants whom others had killed because these servants had believed God’s message, the message to which God himself bore witness. ¹⁰ They loudly asked God, “Sovereign Lord, you are holy and true. How long will it be before you condemn and punish the people on earth who murdered us?” ¹¹ Then God gave to each of them a white robe, and he told them to be patient a little longer. They should be patient until the number of those who also served the Lord with them—who were their brothers and sisters in Christ—would be killed just like they themselves had been killed because of their faith.

ULB:

⁹ When the Lamb opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those who had been killed because of the word of God and the testimony which they held. ¹⁰ They cried out with a loud voice, “How long, Ruler over all, holy and true, until you judge those who live on the earth, and until you avenge our blood?” ¹¹ Then each of them was given a white robe, and they were told that they should wait a little longer until the full number of their fellow servants and their brothers and sisters was reached who were to be killed, just as they had been killed.

translationNotes

the fifth seal

“the next seal” or “seal number five” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

under the altar

This may have been “at the base of the altar.”

those who had been killed

This can be translated with an active verb. AT “those whom others had killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because of the word of God and the testimony which they held

Here “Word of God” is a metonym for the message from God and “held” is a metaphor. Possible meanings are 1) holding the testimony refers to believing God’s word and testimony. AT: “because of the teachings of scripture and what they taught about Jesus Christ” or “because they believed the word of God, which is his testimony” or 2) holding the testimony refers to testifying about the word of God. AT: “because they testified about the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

avenge our blood

The word blood here represents their deaths. AT: “punish those who killed us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

until the full number ... were to be killed

This implies that God had decided that a certain number of people should be killed by their enemies.

their fellow servants and their brothers and sisters

This is one group of people described in two ways: as servants and as brothers and sisters. AT: “their brothers and sisters who serve God with them” or “their fellow believers who serve God with them”

brothers and sisters

Christians are often spoken of as being one another’s brothers and sisters. AT: “fellow Christians” or “fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- soul, souls
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- true, truth, truths
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance
- robe, robes, robed
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- brother, brothers

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then I saw the Lamb open the sixth seal, and the earth shook violently. The sun became as black as cloth made of black wool. The whole moon became red like blood. ¹³ Stars fell to the earth in great numbers, just as immature figs fall when a fig tree shakes in a strong wind. ¹⁴ The sky split open and rolled up on either side just as an old scroll rolls up when it is split in two. Every mountain and island was shaken out of its place.

ULB:

¹² When the Lamb opened the sixth seal, I watched and there was a great earthquake. The sun became as black as sackcloth, and the full moon became like blood. ¹³ The stars in the heavens fell to the earth, just as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit when shaken by a stormy wind. ¹⁴ The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up. Every mountain and island was moved out of its place.

translationNotes

the sixth seal

“the next seal” or “seal number six” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

as black as sackcloth

Sometimes sackcloth was made of black hair. People would wear sackcloth when they were mourning. The image of sackcloth is meant to lead people to think of death and mourning. AT: “as black as mourning clothes” (See: [Simile](#))

like blood

The image of blood is meant to lead people to think of death. How it was like blood can be stated clearly. AT: “red like blood” (See: [Simile](#))

just as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit when shaken by a stormy wind

This can be stated in active form. AT: “just as a stormy wind shakes a fig tree and causes it to drop its unripe fruit” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The sky vanished like a scroll that was being rolled up

The sky was normally thought of as being strong like a sheet of metal, but now it was weak like a sheet of paper and easily torn and rolled up. (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [blood](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [fig, figs](#)
- [scroll, scrolls](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 6:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ As a result, all the people on earth, including kings, high-ranking people, generals, rich people, powerful people, along with everybody else, both slave and free, hid in caves and between the mountain rocks. ¹⁶ They shouted to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us and hide us so that the one who sits on the throne will not be able to see us, and so that the Lamb will not be able to punish us! ¹⁷ This is the terrible day on which they will punish us. No one will be able to survive!"

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the kings of the earth and the important people, and the generals, and the rich, and the powerful, and everyone else, slave and free, hid in caves and among the rocks of the mountains. ¹⁶ They said to the mountains and to the rocks, "Fall on us! Hide us from the face of the one who is seated on the throne and from the Lamb's wrath. ¹⁷ For the great day of their wrath has come. Who is able to stand?"

translationNotes**the generals**

This word refers to the warriors who command in the battle.

caves

large holes in the sides of hills

the face of the one

This refers to God. They did not want God to see them and punish them. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

face

Here "face" is used for the idea of "presence." AT: "God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the great day of their wrath has come

The day of their wrath refers to the time when they would punish wicked people. AT: "this is the terrible time when they will punish people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

has come

Existing now is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))

their wrath

“Their” refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.

Who is able to stand?

Surviving, or staying alive, is spoken of as standing. This question is used to express their great sadness and fear that no one will be able to survive when God punishes them. AT: “No one can survive” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 07 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many scholars believe the first half of this chapter is about a great revival among the Israelites, in which 144,000 people will come to believe in Jesus. The second half of this chapter tells about a great revival among the Gentiles, in which countless Gentiles will come to faith in Jesus. (See: [believe](#), [believes](#), [believed](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelievers](#), [unbelief](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:5-8, 15-17.

Special concepts in this chapter

Worship

The people in this chapter respond to these events with repentance and worship. This is the proper response to the information contained in this book. (See: [reveal](#), [reveals](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#), [repent](#), [repents](#), [repented](#), [repentance](#) and [worship](#))

The Great Tribulation

This is a period when the people of the earth will be greatly punished by God. There is some disagreement about this period but many scholars believe it is a reference to the last half of the seven years of tribulation prophesied in Revelation 4-19 and in the rest of Scripture.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This is a reference to Jesus. In this chapter, it also functions as a title for Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 07:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ After this I saw four angels standing on the earth. One was standing at the north, one at the east, one at the south, and one at the west. They were keeping back the winds from blowing and destroying things on the earth, on the ocean, or even on any tree. ² Then I saw another angel come up from the east. He was carrying God's seal. With this seal God, who is all-powerful, marks his own people to protect them. This angel called out with a loud voice to the four angels whom God had told to harm the earth and the ocean. ³ He said to them, "Do not harm the earth or the ocean or the trees until we have marked the servants of our God on their foreheads."

ULB:

¹ After this I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, tightly holding back the four winds of the earth so that no wind should blow on the earth, on the sea, or against any tree. ² I saw another angel coming up from the east, who had the seal of the living God. He cried out with a loud voice to the four angels who were given permission to harm the earth and the sea: ³ "Do not harm the earth, the sea, or the trees until we have put a seal on the foreheads of the servants of our God."

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of 144,000 servants of God who become marked with seals. Their marking takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

the four corners of the earth

The earth is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase "the four corners" refers to the north, south, east, and west.

the seal of the living God

The word "seal" here refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God's people. AT: "the marker" or "stamp" (See: [Metonymy](#))

put a seal on the foreheads

The word "seal" here refers to a mark. This mark shows that the people belong to God and that he will protect them. AT: "put a mark on the foreheads" (See: [Metonymy](#))

foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Then the angel and his fellow angels marked all God's servants. I heard the number of people whom they marked. The number was 144,000. They were people from every tribe of Israel. ⁵ The angels marked twelve thousand people from the tribe of Judah, twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben, twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad, ⁶ twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher, twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali, and twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh.

ULB:

⁴ I heard the number of those who were sealed: 144,000, who were sealed from every tribe of the people of Israel:

⁵ twelve thousand from the tribe of Judah,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad,
⁶ twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali,
 twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh,

translationNotes**those who were sealed**

This can be stated with an active verb. AT: "those whom God's angel marked" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

144,000

"one hundred forty-four thousand people" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

twelve thousand from the tribe

"12,000 people from the tribe" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)

- [Reuben](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Manasseh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ In addition, there were twelve thousand from the tribe of Simeon, twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi, twelve thousand from the tribe of Issachar, ⁸ twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun, twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, and twelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin.

ULB:

⁷ twelve thousand from the tribe of Simeon,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Issachar,
⁸ twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, and
twelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin were sealed.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

This continues the list of the people of Israel who were sealed.

translationWords

- [Simeon](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:9-10

UDB:

⁹ After these things happened, I saw a huge crowd. There were so many people that no one could count them. They were from every nation, every tribe, every people group, and every language. They were standing before the throne and before the lamb. They were wearing white robes and held palm branches to wave with their hands in order to celebrate. ¹⁰ They shouted loudly, “Our God, the one who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have rescued us from Satan’s power!”

ULB:

⁹ After these things I looked, and there was a huge multitude that no one could count—from every nation, tribe, people, and language—standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb. They were wearing white robes and holding palm branches in their hands, ¹⁰ and they were calling out with a loud voice:

“Salvation belongs to our God who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb!”

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a second vision about a multitude praising God. This is a different group of people than the 144,000 people who become marked with seals. This vision also takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

a huge multitude

“a huge crowd” or “a great number of people”

white robes

Here the color “white” represents purity.

Salvation belongs to

“Salvation comes from”

Salvation belongs ... to the Lamb

They were praising God and the Lamb. The noun “salvation” can be expressed with the verb “save.” AT “Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- nation, nations
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- throne, thrones, enthroned
- lamb, Lamb of God
- robe, robes, robed
- palm, palms
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ All the angels were standing around the throne, around the elders, and around the four living creatures. They all lay before the throne with their faces to the ground and worshiped God. ¹² They said, “Yes, it is so! We praise, thank, and honor you, our God, forever! We acknowledge that you are completely wise, the powerful one, who is able to do all things forever! It is so!”

ULB:

¹¹ All the angels were standing around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne. They worshiped God, ¹² saying,

“Amen! Praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength be to our God forever and ever! Amen!”

translationNotes**the four living creatures**

These are the four creatures mentioned in [Revelation 4:6-8](#).

they fell on their faces

They lay down facing the ground. See how you translated a similar expression in [Revelation 4:10](#). AT: “they bowed down” (See: [Idiom](#))

Praise, glory ... be to our God

“Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength”

Praise, glory ... thanksgiving, honor ... be to our God

The verb “give” can be used to show how praise, glory, and honor, are to be “to” God. AT: “We must give praise, glory, thanks, and honor to our God”

forever and ever

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [elder, elders](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [worship](#)
- [God](#)
- [amen, truly](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then one of the elders asked me, “These people who are wearing white robes, do you know who they are and from where they come?” ¹⁴ I answered him, “Sir, I do not know. Surely you know who they are!” He said to me, “These are the people who have come through the great tribulation. The Lamb died for them, and God has forgiven them for their sins. It is as if they have washed their robes in his blood and made them clean.

ULB:

¹³ Then one of the elders asked me, “Who are these, clothed with white robes, and where did they come from?” ¹⁴ I said to him, “Sir, you know,” and he said to me, “These are the ones who have come out of the great tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

translationNotes**clothed with white robes**

These white robes showed that they were righteous.

have come out of the great tribulation

“have survived the great tribulation” or “have lived through the great tribulation”

the great tribulation

“the time of terrible suffering” or “the time when people will suffer terribly”

They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb

Being made righteous by the blood of the Lamb is spoken of as washing their robes in his blood. AT: “They have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the blood of the Lamb

The word “blood” is used to refer to the death of Lamb. (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [elder, elders](#)
- [tribulation](#)
- [blood](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 7:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Because of this, they are in front of God's throne, and they worship him day and night in his temple. God, the one who sits on the throne, will protect them. ¹⁶ As a result, they will never again be hungry. They will never again be thirsty. The sun will never again beat on them, nor will any heat scorch them. ¹⁷ This is because the Lamb who is at the throne will take care of them, just as a shepherd takes care of his sheep. He will guide them to the source of eternal life, just as a shepherd leads his sheep to springs of water. God will cause them to no longer be sad. It will be as if he were wiping away all tears from their eyes."

ULB:

- ¹⁵ For this reason, they are before the throne of God,
and they worship him day and night in his temple.
The one who is seated on the throne will spread his tent over them.
- ¹⁶ They will not be hungry again, nor will they be thirsty again.
The sun will not beat down on them,
nor any burning heat.
- ¹⁷ For the Lamb at the center of the throne will be their shepherd,
and he will guide them to springs of living water,
and God will wipe away every tear from their eyes."

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The elder continues to speak to John.

they ... them ... their

All of these refer to those people who have come through the Great Tribulation.

day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping" (See: [Merism](#))

will spread his tent over them

“will put his tent up over them.” Protecting them is spoken of as if he were giving them shelter to live under. AT: “will shelter them” or “will protect them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The sun will not beat down

The sun’s heat is compared to punishment that causes people to suffer. AT: “The sun will not burn them” or “The sun will not make them weak” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Lamb at the center of the throne

“the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne”

For the Lamb ... will be their shepherd

The elder speaks of the Lamb’s care for his people as if it were a shepherd’s care for his sheep. AT: “For the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them” or “For the Lamb ... will care for them as a shepherd cares for his sheep” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will guide them to springs of living water

The elder speaks of what gives life as if it were springs of fresh water. AT: “he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water” or “he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water” (See: [Metaphor](#))

God will wipe away every tear from their eyes

Tears here represent sadness. AT: “God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears” or “God will cause them to not be sad anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [God](#)
- [worship](#)
- [temple](#)
- [tent, tents, tentmakers](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 7 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 08 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven seals

There is disagreement over how these seals are attached to the scroll. It would be logical if they were all side by side, but the scroll would only have revealed its contents after the last seal is broken. This is not how this chapter describes the scroll because each seal reveals a judgment. It is also commonly held that the absent seventh seal uncovers the seven trumpet judgments. (See: [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Passive voice

The passive voice is frequently used in this chapter to hide the identity of the subject performing the action. This will be difficult to convey if the translator's language does not have a passive voice. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Similes

The author uses many different similes. This is because he is attempting to describe the image he sees in the vision. Therefore, he compares the images in this vision to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 08:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 8:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the Lamb opened the seventh seal, and there was no sound at all in heaven for a short time.

² I saw the seven angels who stand in front of God. He gave each of them a trumpet.

ULB:

¹ When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was a silence in heaven for about half an hour. ²

Then I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The Lamb opens the seventh seal.

the seventh seal

This is the last of the seven seals on the scroll. AT: “the next seal” or “the final seal” or “seal number seven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

seven trumpets were given to them

They were each given one trumpet. This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “God gave them seven trumpets” or 2) “the Lamb gave them seven trumpets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:3-5

UDB:

³ Another angel came and stood at the altar. He had a golden bowl for burning incense. God gave him a large quantity of incense in order that he might offer it, with the prayers of all God's people, on the gold altar that is in front of God's throne. Then he burned this incense on the altar. ⁴ From the bowl in the angel's hand, the smoke of the incense, along with the prayers of God's people, went up to God. ⁵ Then the angel took the golden bowl and filled it with coals of fire from the altar. He threw it all onto the earth. Thunder crashed and rumbled, lightning flashed, and the earth shook.

ULB:

³ Another angel came, holding a golden incense bowl, standing at the incense altar. Much incense was given to him so that he would offer it with the prayers of all the believers on the golden incense altar before the throne. ⁴ The smoke of the incense, with the prayers of the believers, rose up before God from the angel's hand. ⁵ The angel took the incense bowl and filled it with fire from the altar. Then he threw it down to the earth, and there were crashes of thunder, rumblings, flashes of lightning, and an earthquake.

translationNotes

he would offer it

“he would offer the incense to God by burning it”

the angel's hand

This refers to the bowl in the angel's hand. AT: “the bowl in the angel's hand” (See: [Metonymy](#))

filled it with fire

The word “fire” here probably refers to burning coals. AT: “filled it with burning coals” or “filled it with coals of fire” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
-

- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Then the seven angels, each of which had one of the seven trumpets, got ready to blow them. ⁷ The first angel blew his trumpet, and hail and fire mixed with blood poured down onto the earth. As a result, one-third of everything on the surface of the land was burned up: one-third of the trees burned up, and one-third of all the green grass was burned up.

ULB:

⁶ The seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared to sound them.

⁷ The first angel sounded his trumpet, and there was hail and fire mixed with blood. It was thrown down onto the earth so that a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up. ^[1]

8:7 ^[1]Some older versions leave out, *so that a third of it was burned up*.

translationNotes**General Information:**

The seven angels sound the seven trumpets, one at a time.

It was thrown down onto the earth

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a third of it was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm](#)

- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [blood](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Then the second angel blew his trumpet, and something that was like a huge mountain burning with fire fell into the ocean. As a result, one-third of the ocean became red like blood, ⁹ one-third of the living creatures in the ocean died, and one-third of the ships in the ocean were destroyed.

ULB:

⁸ The second angel sounded his trumpet, and something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea. A third of the sea became blood, ⁹ a third of the living creatures in the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed.

translationNotes**The second angel**

“The next angel” or “Angel number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

A third of the sea became blood

The fraction “A third” can be explained in translation. AT: “It was like the sea was divided into three parts, and one of those parts became blood” (See: [Fractions](#))

became blood

Possible meanings are it 1) “became red like blood” or it 2) really became blood. (See: [Simile](#))

the living creatures in the sea

“the things living in the sea” or “the fish and other animals that lived in the sea”

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)

- [blood](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then the third angel blew his trumpet, and a huge star, which was burning like a torch, fell from the sky into one-third of the rivers and into one-third of the springs of water. ¹¹ The name of the star is Bitterness. As a result, the water in one-third of the rivers and springs became bitter. Many people died from drinking the water because it had become bitter.

ULB:

¹⁰ The third angel sounded his trumpet, and a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch, on a third of the rivers and springs of water. ¹¹ The name of the star is Wormwood. A third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died from the waters that became bitter.

translationNotes**a huge star fell from the sky, blazing like a torch**

“a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky.” The fire of the huge star looked similar to the fire of a torch. (See: [Simile](#))

torch

a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light

The name of the star is Wormwood

Wormwood is a shrub that tastes bitter. People made medicine out of it, but they also believed that it was poisonous. AT: “The name of the star is Bitterness” or “The name of the star is Bitter Medicine” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

became wormwood

The bitter taste of the water is spoken of as if it were wormwood. AT: “became bitter like wormwood” or “became bitter” (See: [Metaphor](#))

died from the waters that became bitter

“died when they drank the bitter water”

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:12

UDB:

¹² Then the fourth angel blew his trumpet, and God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars so that they lost their light for one-third of the time. The sun did not shine during one-third of the day, and the moon and stars did not shine during one-third of the night.

ULB:

¹² The fourth angel sounded his trumpet, and a third of the sun was struck, as well as a third of the moon and a third of the stars. So a third of them turned dark; a third of the day and a third of the night had no light.

translationNotes

a third of the sun was struck

Causing something bad to happen to the sun is spoken of as striking, or hitting, it. This can be stated with an active verb. AT: “a third of the sun changed” or “God changed a third of the sun” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

a third of them turned dark

Possible meanings are 1) “one third of the time they were dark” or 2) “one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark”

a third of the day and a third of the night had no light

“there was no light during one third of the day and one third of the night” or “they did not shine during one third of the day and one third of the night”

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 8:13

UDB:

¹³ As I watched, I heard an eagle that was flying high in the sky shouting in a loud voice, “Terrible things will happen to the people who live on the earth when the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them!”

ULB:

¹³ I looked, and I heard an eagle ^[1] that was flying overhead calling out with a loud voice, “Woe, woe, woe, to those who live on the earth, because of the remaining trumpet blasts that are about to be sounded by the three angels.”

8:13 ^[1]Some copies have the word *angel* instead of *eagle*.

translationNotes

because of the remaining trumpet ... angels

This can be stated in active form. AT: “because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- eagle, eagles
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- voice, voices
- woe
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- earth, earthen, earthly
- trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters
- angel, angels, archangel

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 8 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 09 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the seven trumpet judgments. This chapter and the previous one form a single unit.

Woe

There are several specific “woes” mentioned in the book of Revelation. This chapter contains the first of these woes. It is possible that these have some structural significance or importance to the chronology of the events of Revelation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Animal imagery

Animal imagery is common in this book, as well as very common in this chapter. The people of the ancient Near East probably viewed these animals as having some “trait” that typified the animal. For example, a lion is often seen as powerful. The translator should not try to determine the meaning of each of these images.

Bottomless pit

This is a common image in the book of Revelation that portrays hell. It emphasizes that hell is inescapable. It is described as being down, in opposition to heaven which is considered up. This emphasizes that neither is on earth. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Abaddon and Apollyon

“Abaddon” here is a Hebrew word, and “Apollyon” is a Greek word. Both words mean “Destroyer.” John transliterated the sounds of the Hebrew word by writing them with Greek letters. The translators of the ULB and the UDB transliterated the sounds of both words by writing them with English letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate these words using the letters of the target language. Since the original Greek readers would have understood the meaning of “Apollyon,” translators may also supply the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Repentance

This chapter mentions the theme of repentance. Despite these great miracles, the people are said to avoid repentance and remain in their sin. One should not lose sight of this theme when reading the book of Revelation. (See: [repent](#), [repents](#), [repented](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter**Symbol**

Satan is often described as a fallen angel. Since stars are symbols for angels in the book of Revelation, the phrase “a star from heaven that had fallen” probably symbolizes Satan. (See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Symbolic Language](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Simile

There are many similes in this chapter. Their purpose is to describe the complex images that John sees in his vision. Therefore, they serve more of a practical rather than poetic function. (See: [Simile](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**“The people who did not have the seal of God”**

It is best to leave the meaning of this phrase unclear in translation, if possible. Many scholars believe the seal to be a mark made to distinguish believers from unbelievers in this time of tribulation. (See: [believe](#), [believes](#), [believed](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelievers](#), [unbelief](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 09:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 9:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the fifth angel blew his trumpet, and I saw a star that had fallen from the sky to the earth. God gave it the key to the shaft that went down but had no ending. ² When he opened that shaft, smoke rose from it like smoke from a great burning furnace. The smoke prevented anyone from seeing the light of the sun and the sky.

ULB:

¹ Then the fifth angel sounded his trumpet. I saw a star from heaven that had fallen to the earth. The star was given the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit. ² He opened the shaft of the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the shaft like smoke from a huge furnace. The sun and the air turned dark by the smoke pouring out of the shaft.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The fifth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

I saw a star from heaven that had fallen

John saw the star after it had fallen. He did not watch it fall.

the key to the shaft of the bottomless pit

“the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit”

the shaft of the bottomless pit

Possible meanings are 1) “shaft” is another way of referring to the pit and describes it as long and narrow, or 2) “shaft” refers to the opening of the pit.

the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

like smoke from a huge furnace

A huge furnace gives off a great amount of thick, dark smoke. AT: “like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace” (See: [Simile](#))

The sun and the air turned dark

“Turned dark” here is an idiom for “changed to dark.” AT: “The sun and the air changed from light to dark” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [pit, pits, pitfall](#)
- [furnace](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:3-4**UDB:**

³ Locusts also came out of the smoke onto the earth. God gave them power to sting people as scorpions sting people. ⁴ God told the locusts that they should not harm the grass of the earth or any plants or any tree. God said that they should harm only those people who did not have the mark on their foreheads to show that they belonged to God.

ULB:

³ Out of the smoke locusts came on the earth, and they were given power like that of scorpions on the earth. ⁴ They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree, but only the people who did not have the seal of God on their foreheads.

translationNotes**locusts**

insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

power like that of scorpions

Scorpions have the ability to sting and poison other animals and people. AT: “the ability to sting people as scorpions do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

scorpions

small insects with poisonous stingers on their tails. Their sting is extremely painful and the pain lasts a long time. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree

Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and all the leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.

but only the people

The phrase “to damage” or “to harm” is understood. AT: “but only to harm the people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the seal of God

The word “seal” here refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God’s people. See how you translated “seal” in [Revelation 7:3](#). AT: “the marker of God” or “stamp of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

foreheads

The forehead is the top of the face, above the eyes.

translationWords

- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ God did not allow the locusts to kill those people. Instead, the locusts kept torturing people for five months. The pain those people felt was like the pain that a scorpion causes when it stings someone. ⁶ During the time when the locusts torture rebellious people, the pain will be so bad that people will want to find a way to die, but they will not find any way. They will long to die, but they will not be able to die.

ULB:

⁵ They were not given permission to kill those people, but only to torture them for five months. Their agony would be like the sting of a scorpion when it strikes a person. ⁶ In those days people will seek death, but will not find it. They will greatly desire to die, but death will flee from them.

translationNotes**They were not given permission**

“They” refers to the locusts. ([Revelation 9:03](#))

those people

the people whom the locusts were stinging

but only to torture them

Here the words “given permission” are understood. AT: “but only given permission to torture them” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

to torture them for five months

The locusts would be allowed to do this for five months.

to torture them

“to make them suffer terrible pain”

the sting of a scorpion

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.

people will seek death, but will not find it

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun “death.” AT: “people will try to find a way to die, but will not find it” or “people will try to kill themselves, but will not find a way to die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

will greatly desire to die

“will want very much to die” or “will wish that they could die”

death will flee from them

John speaks of death as if it were a person or animal that could run away. AT: “they will not be able to die” or “they will not die” (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:7-9

UDB:

⁷ The locusts looked like horses that are ready for battle. They had on their heads what looked like golden crowns. Their faces were like the faces of people. ⁸ They had long hair like women's long hair. Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth. ⁹ They wore breastplates made of metal. When they were flying, their wings made a noise like the roar of many horses pulling chariots as they are rushing into battle.

ULB:

⁷ The locusts looked like horses prepared for war. On their heads were something like crowns of gold, and their faces were like human faces. ⁸ They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like lions' teeth. ⁹ They had breastplates like iron breastplates, and the sound of their wings was like the sound made by many chariots and horses running into battle.

translationNotes

General Information:

These locusts did not look like ordinary locusts. John describes them by telling how parts of them looked like other things.

crowns of gold

These were likenesses of wreaths of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

translationWords

- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- crown, crowns, crowned
- gold, golden
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses
- breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece
- chariot, chariots, charioteers

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 9 translationQuestions

Revelation 9:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ They had tails like tails of scorpions. With these tails they could sting people. Their power to harm people during those five months was in their tails. ¹¹ The king who ruled over them was the angel of the shaft that went down but had no ending. His name in the Hebrew language is Abaddon. In the Greek language it is Apollyon. Both of these names mean “Destroyer.”

¹² That ended the first terrible event. But be aware that two more terrible events are still to come.

ULB:

¹⁰ They had tails with stingers like scorpions; in their tails they had power to harm people for five months. ¹¹ They had as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit. His name in Hebrew was Abaddon, and in Greek he had the name Apollyon.

¹² The first woe is past. Look! After this there are still two disasters to come.

translationNotes

They had tails

The word “They” refers to the locusts.

with stingers like scorpions

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 9:6](#). AT: “with stingers like scorpion stingers” or “with stingers that could cause terrible pain as scorpion stingers can” (See: [Simile](#))

in their tails they had power to harm people for five months

Possible meanings are 1) they had power for five months to harm people or 2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.

the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

Abaddon ... Apollyon

Both names mean “Destroyer.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

there are still two disasters to come

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [power, powers](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [pit, pits, pitfall](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [Greek, Grecian](#)
- [woe](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:13-15

UDB:

¹³ Then the sixth angel blew his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four corners of the golden altar that is in God's presence. ¹⁴ The voice was saying to the sixth angel, the one who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels whom I have bound at the great river Euphrates." ¹⁵ Then those four angels went free, those who had waited for that exact hour of that day, month, and year. They went free in order that they might enable their soldiers to kill one-third of the people.

ULB:

¹³ The sixth angel sounded his trumpet, and I heard a voice coming from the horns of the golden altar that is present before God. ¹⁴ The voice said to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, "Release the four angels who are bound at the great Euphrates River." ¹⁵ The four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of mankind.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The sixth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

I heard a voice coming

The voice refers to the one who was speaking. John does not say who the speaker was, but it may have been God. AT: "I heard someone speaking" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

horns of the golden altar

These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the altar.

The voice said

The voice refers to the speaker. AT: "The speaker said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The four angels who had been prepared for ... that year, were released

This can be stated with an active form. AT: "The angel released the four angels who had been prepared for ... that year" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The four angels who had been prepared

This can be stated with an active form. AT: "The four angels whom God had prepared" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for that hour, that day, that month, and that year

These words are used to show that there is a specific, chosen time and not just any time. AT: “for that exact time” (See: [Parallelism](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [God](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [Euphrates River, the River](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The number of those soldiers riding on horses was two hundred million. I heard someone say how many there were. ¹⁷ In the vision I saw what the horses and the soldiers who rode them looked like. The soldiers wore breastplates that were red like fire, dusky blue like smoke, and yellow like sulfur. The heads of the horses were like the heads of lions. From their mouths came fire, smoke, and fumes of burning sulfur.

ULB:

¹⁶ The number of the soldiers on horseback was 200,000,000. I heard their number. ¹⁷ This is how I saw the horses in my vision and those who rode on them: Their breastplates were fiery red, dark blue and sulfurous yellow. The heads of the horses resembled the heads of lions, and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Suddenly, 200,000,000 soldiers on horseback appear in John's vision. John is no longer speaking about the four angels mentioned in the previous verse.

200,000,000

Some ways to express this are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in [Revelation 5:11](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

fiery red

"red like fire" or "bright red." See how you translated this in [Revelation 6:3](#).

sulfurous yellow

"yellow like sulfur" or "bright yellow like sulfur"

out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur

"fire, smoke, and sulfur came out of their mouths"

translationWords

- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- vision, visions, envision
- breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece
- lions, lion, lioness, lionesses
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- sulfur, sulfurous

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Those three things—the fire, the smoke, and the burning sulfur from the horses’ mouths—killed one-third of the people. ¹⁹ The power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails. Their tails had heads like snakes by which they harmed people.

ULB:

¹⁸ A third of the people were killed by these three plagues: the fire, smoke, and sulfur that came out of their mouths. ¹⁹ For the power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails—for their tails were like snakes, and they had heads with which they inflicted wounds on people.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the horses and the plagues brought upon humanity.

A third of the people

“One third of the people.” See how you translated “A third” in [Revelation 8:7](#). (See: [Fractions](#))

For the power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails

The abstract noun “power” can be translated with an adjective. AT: “For it was the horses’ mouths and tails that were so powerful” or “for it was the horses’ mouths and tails that were able to hurt people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [plague, plagues](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [sulfur, sulfurous](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 9:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ But the rest of the people, those who were not killed by the plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur, did not turn from the sinful things they were doing. They did not stop worshiping demons or the idols that they themselves had made of gold, of silver, of bronze, of stone, and of wood. The people did not stop worshiping them, even though they were idols that could not see, hear, or walk. ²¹ They did not stop murdering people, or practicing sorcery, or acting in sexually immoral ways, or stealing things.

ULB:

²⁰ The rest of mankind, those who were not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the deeds they had done, nor did they stop worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood—things that cannot see, hear, or walk. ²¹ Neither did they repent of their murders, their sorcery, their sexual immorality or their acts of theft.

translationNotes**those who were not killed by these plagues**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whom the plagues had not killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

things that cannot see, hear, or walk

This phrase reminds us that idols are not alive and do not deserve to be worshiped. But the people did not stop worshiping them. AT: “even though idols cannot see, hear, or walk” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

translationWords

- plague, plagues
- repent, repents, repented, repentance
- works, deeds, work, acts
- worship
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- gold, golden
- silver
- bronze
- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 9 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven thunders

It is unclear what is meant by the seven thunders. It is perfectly acceptable for the translator to not understand this phrase and translate it as “seven thunders.” (See: [Personification](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

“The mystery of God”

It is uncertain what this references. It is not the “mystery” that Paul describes, namely the church. It probably does share the meaning of being something that is currently hidden or unknown, which will be revealed at this time. (See: [reveal](#), [reveals](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Coming down from heaven”

Heaven is frequently said to be “up.” The reason for this is to emphasize that heaven is not located on the earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Simile

There are many different similes used to describe the mighty angel. The similes are used to try to describe what John sees by relating it to everyday things. The rainbow and cloud, however, should be understood as literal, since they are not part of any simile. (See: [Simile](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Scrolls

The scroll mentioned in this chapter is different from the scrolls which have been the subject of much of the book of Revelation to this point. It is called the “little scroll” here. The translator should ensure the reader is aware that there is more than one scroll.

Links:

- [Revelation 10:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 10:1-2**UDB:**

¹ In the vision I saw another mighty angel come down out of heaven. A cloud surrounded him. There was a rainbow over his head. His face shone like the sun. His legs looked like columns of fire. ² He had in his hand a small scroll that was open. He set his right foot on the ocean and his left foot on the land.

ULB:

¹ Then I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven. He was robed in a cloud, and there was a rainbow above his head. His face was like the sun and his feet were like pillars of fire. ² He held a little scroll, which was opened in his hand. He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land.

translationNotes**General Information:**

John begins to describe a vision of a mighty angel holding a scroll. In John's vision he is viewing what is happening from earth. This takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

He was robed in a cloud

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing a cloud as his clothing. This expression may be understood as metaphor. However, because very unusual things were often seen in visions, it might be understood as a literally true statement in its context. (See: [Metaphor](#))

His face was like the sun

John compares the brightness of his face with the brightness of the sun. AT: "His face was bright like the sun" (See: [Simile](#))

his feet were like pillars of fire

The word "feet" refers to the legs. AT: "his legs were like pillars of fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He put his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land

"He stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land"

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [scroll, scrolls](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 10:3-4**UDB:**

³ He shouted something with a loud voice, a voice like the roar of a lion. When he shouted, it thundered seven times; in the thunder were words that I could understand. ⁴ I was about to write the words that I heard, but a voice from heaven said to me, “Keep secret what the thunder said! Do not write it down!”

ULB:

³ Then he shouted in a loud voice like a roaring lion. When he shouted, the seven thunders spoke out with their sounds. ⁴ When the seven thunders spoke out, I was about to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Keep secret what the seven thunders said. Do not write it down.”

translationNotes**Then he shouted**

“Then the angel shouted”

the seven thunders spoke out

The thunder is described as if it were a person who could speak. AT: “the seven thunders made a loud noise” or “the thunder sounded very loudly seven times”

seven thunders

Thunder occurring seven times is spoken of as if it were seven different “thunders.”

but I heard a voice from heaven

The word “voice” refers to words spoken by someone other than the angel. AT: “but I heard someone speaking from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [lions, lion, lioness, lionesses](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 10:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Then the angel whom I had seen standing on the ocean and the land raised his right hand toward heaven, ⁶ and he asked the one who lives forever—the one who created heaven and everything that is in it, who created the earth and everything that is on it, and who created the ocean and everything that is in it—to say that what he was going to say was true. The angel said that God would no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do. ⁷ He said that when the time came for the seventh angel to blow his trumpet, God’s secret plan would be finished, just as he had said long ago to his servants, the prophets.

ULB:

⁵ Then the angel I saw standing on the sea and the earth raised his right hand to heaven. ⁶ He swore by the one who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and all that is in it, the earth and all that is on it, and the sea and all that is in it, and the angel said, “There will be no more delay. ⁷ But on the day when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, then the mystery of God will be accomplished, just as he proclaimed to his servants the prophets.”

translationNotes**raised his right hand to heaven**

He did this to show that he was swearing by God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

He swore by the one who lives forever and ever

“He asked that what he was going to say would be confirmed by the one who lives forever and ever”

the one who lives forever and ever

Here “the one” refers to God.

There will be no more delay

“There will be no more waiting” or “God will not delay”

the mystery of God will be accomplished

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will accomplish his mystery” or “God will complete his secret plan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- create, creates, created, creation, creator
- mystery, mysteries, hidden truth, hidden truths
- God
- proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 10:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ The one whom I had heard speak from heaven spoke to me again. He said, “Go and take the open scroll from the hand of the angel who is standing on the ocean and on the land.” ⁹ So I went to the angel and asked him to give me the little scroll. He said to me, “Take it and eat it. In your mouth it will taste sweet like honey, but it will make your stomach bitter.”

ULB:

⁸ The voice I heard from heaven spoke to me again: “Go, take the open scroll that is in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land.” ⁹ Then I went to the angel and told him to give me the little scroll. He said to me, “Take the scroll and eat it. It will make your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John hears the voice from heaven, which he had heard in [Revelation 10:4](#), speak to him again.

The voice I heard from heaven

The word “voice” refers to the speaker. AT: “The one I heard speak from heaven” or “The one who had spoken to me from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I

The word “I” here refers to John.

He said to me

“The angel said to me”

bitter

“sour” or “acid.” This refers to a bad taste from the stomach after eating something that is not good.

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

- [scroll, scrolls](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 10:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. In my mouth it tasted sweet like honey, but then it made my stomach bitter. ¹¹ Then someone said to me, "You must speak God's messages again about many nations, people groups, speakers of many languages, and many kings."

ULB:

¹⁰ I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but after I ate it, my stomach became bitter. ¹¹ Then someone said to me, "You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings."

translationNotes

languages

This refers to the people who speak the languages. AT: "many language communities" or "many groups of people who speak their own languages" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- scroll, scrolls
- angel, angels, archangel
- honey, honeycomb
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation, nations
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 11:15, 17-18.

Woe

There are several specific “woes” mentioned in the book of Revelation. This chapter contains the second and third of these woes. It is possible these have some structural significance or importance to the chronology of the events of Revelation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Gentiles

The word “Gentiles” is used in this chapter to refer to ungodly Gentiles and not Gentile Christians. (See:)

Two witnesses

These two witnesses serve an important function as prophets during the time of Revelation. Scholars have put forth many suggestions about the identity of these two men. It is unknown and unimportant who they are. Instead, it is their indestructible nature and their message that is more significant and undeniable. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bottomless pit

This is a common image in the book of Revelation that portrays hell. It emphasizes hell is inescapable. It is described as being down, in opposition to heaven, which is considered as being up. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“These two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth”

The two prophets are connected with a great deal of destruction, which will cause great harm to the people on the earth. This is not mean-spirited, but it is an effort to bring these people to repentance. But they will not repent. (See: [repent](#), [repents](#), [repented](#), [repentance](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

“The time has come for the dead to be judged”

People will be judged after they die. Those who reject Jesus will suffer eternal punishment, while Christians will be rewarded for the faithfulness with which they lived their lives as Christians. (See: [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 11:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 11:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then an angel gave to me a reed similar to a measuring stick. God said to me, "Go to the temple, measure it and the altar in it, and count the people who are worshiping there. ² But do not measure the courtyard outside of the temple building because I have given it to the non-Jewish people groups. As a result, they will trample the city of Jerusalem for forty-two months.

ULB:

¹ A reed was given to me to use like a measuring rod. I was told, "Get up and measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it. ² But do not measure the courtyard outside the temple, for it has been given over to the Gentiles. They will trample the holy city for forty-two months.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision about receiving a measuring rod and two witnesses that God appointed. This vision also takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

A reed was given to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone gave me a reed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

given to me ... I was told

The words "me" and "I" refer to John.

those who worship in it

"count those who worship in the temple"

trample

to treat something as worthless by walking on it

forty-two months

"42 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- reed, reeds
- rod, rods
- temple
- God
- altar, altars
- worship
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- Gentile, Gentiles
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:3-5

UDB:

³ I will send two witnesses to announce what I reveal to them for 1,260 days. They will show they are sad about the people's sin by wearing rough clothes made from goat's hair." ⁴ Those witnesses are the ones that are represented by the two olive trees and the two lampstands that are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth. ⁵ If anyone tries to harm those witnesses, fire comes from the witnesses' mouths and destroys them. If people want to harm them, the two witnesses certainly kill them in the same way.

ULB:

³ I will give my two witnesses authority to prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth." ⁴ These witnesses are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth. ⁵ If anyone chooses to harm them, fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies. Anyone who wishes to harm them must be killed in this way.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to John.

for 1,260 days

“for one thousand two hundred and sixty days” or “for twelve hundred and sixty days” (See: [Numbers](#))

days, clothed in sackcloth

Why they will wear sackcloth can be made explicit. AT: “days, wearing rough mourning clothes” or “days: they will wear scratchy clothes to show that they are very sad” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

These witnesses are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth

The two olive trees and the two lampstands symbolize these people, but they are not literally the people. AT: “The two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth represent these witnesses” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the two olive trees and the two lampstands

John expects his readers to know about them because many years earlier another prophet had written about them. AT: “the two olive trees and the two lampstands, told about in scripture,” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies

Because this is about future events, it can also be stated in the future tense. AT: “fire will come out of their mouth and devour their enemies”

fire ... devours their enemies

Fire burning and killing people is spoken of as if it were an animal that could eat them up. AT: “fire ... will destroy their enemies” or “fire ... will completely burn up their enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed](#)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [olive, olives](#)
- [lampstand, lampstands](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [devour, devours, devoured, devouring](#)
- [adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Those witnesses will have authority over the sky in order to keep rain from falling during the time that they are announcing what God reveals to them. They also will have authority to cause water everywhere to become blood; they will also have authority to send down to the earth all kinds of plagues. They will do this as often as they wish. ⁷ When they have finished announcing to people the message from God, the beast that comes up from the shaft that went down but had no ending will attack them, overcome them, and kill them.

ULB:

⁶ These witnesses have authority to close up the sky so that no rain will fall during the time that they prophesy. They have power to turn the waters to blood and to strike the earth with every kind of plague whenever they wish. ⁷ When they will have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up from the bottomless pit will wage war against them. He will conquer them and kill them.

translationNotes**to close up the sky so that no rain will fall**

John speaks of the sky as if it had a door that can be opened to let rain fall or closed to stop the rain. AT: “to keep rain from falling from the sky” (See: [Metaphor](#))

power to turn the waters to blood

“power to turn” here is an idiom for “power to change.” AT: “power to change the waters to blood” (See: [Idiom](#))

to strike the earth with every kind of plague

John speaks of the plagues as if they were a stick that someone could hit the earth with. AT: “to cause all kinds of trouble to occur on earth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

translationWords

- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- authority, authorities
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- power, powers
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- water, waters, watered, watering
- blood
- earth, earthen, earthly
- kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses
- plague, plagues
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- beast, beasts
- pit, pits, pitfall

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ The dead bodies of the two witnesses will lie in the street of the great city where their Lord was crucified, the city that is symbolically called Sodom or Egypt because its people are very evil like the people who lived in Sodom and Egypt. ⁹ Individuals of many people groups, tribes, language groups, and nations will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days. But they will not allow anyone to bury their bodies.

ULB:

⁸ Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city (which is symbolically called Sodom and Egypt) where their Lord was crucified. ⁹ For three and a half days some from every people, tribe, language, and nation will look at their bodies. They will not permit them to be placed in a tomb.

translationNotes**Their bodies**

This refers to the bodies of the two witnesses.

in the street of the great city

The city had more than one street. This was a public place where people could see them. AT: “in one of the streets of the great city” or “in the main street of the great city”

three and a half days

“3 full days and one half day” or “3.5 days” or “3 1/2 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

their Lord

They served the Lord, and like him would die in that city.

They will not permit them to be placed in a tomb

This will be a sign of disrespect.

translationWords

- [Sodom](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)

- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- crucify, crucified
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ When the people who live on the earth see that the witnesses are dead, they will rejoice and celebrate. They will send gifts to each other because these two prophets had sent plagues that tormented them. ¹¹ But after three and a half days, God will cause them to breathe again and live. They will stand up, and the people who see them will be terrified. ¹² The two witnesses will hear a loud voice from heaven saying to them: “Come up here!” Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud. Their enemies will watch them go up.

ULB:

¹⁰ Those who live on the earth will rejoice over them and celebrate. They will even send gifts to one another because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth. ¹¹ But after three and a half days a breath of life from God will enter them, and they will stand on their feet. Great fear will fall on those who see them. ¹² Then they will hear a loud voice from heaven say to them, “Come up here!” Then they will go up into heaven in a cloud, while their enemies look on.

translationNotes**will rejoice over them and celebrate**

“will rejoice that the two witnesses have died”

even send gifts to one another

This action shows how happy the people were. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

because these two prophets tormented those who lived on the earth

This is the reason that the people will be so happy that the witnesses have died.

three and a half days

“3 full days and one half day” or “3.5 days” or “3 1/2 days.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 11:9](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

a breath of life from God will enter them

The ability to breathe is spoken of as if it were something that can go into people. AT: “God will cause the two witnesses to breathe again and live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Great fear will fall on those who see them

Fear is spoken of as if it is a object that can fall on people. AT: “Those who see them will be extremely afraid” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Then they will hear

Possible meanings are 1) the two witnesses will hear or 2) the people will hear what is said to the two witnesses.

a loud voice from heaven

The word “voice” refers to the one who speaks. AT: “someone speak loudly to them from heaven and” (See: [Metonymy](#))

say to them

“say to the two witnesses”

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- gift, gifts
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors
- breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- God
- fear, fears, afraid
- voice, voices
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ At that same time there will be a great earthquake, as a result of which a tenth of the buildings in the city will collapse, and seven thousand people will die. The rest of the people will be afraid and will acknowledge that the God who rules in heaven is awesome.

¹⁴ That will be the second terrible event. Be aware that the third terrible event will happen soon after.

ULB:

¹³ At that hour there will be a major earthquake, and a tenth part of the city will collapse. Seven thousand people will be killed in the earthquake, and the survivors will be terrified and give glory to the God of heaven.

¹⁴ The second woe is past. Look! The third woe is coming quickly.

translationNotes**Seven thousand people**

“7,000 people” (See: [Numbers](#))

the survivors

“those who do not die” or “those who are still living”

give glory to the God of heaven

“say that the God of heaven is glorious”

The second woe is past

“The second terrible event is over.” See how you translated “The first woe is past” in [Revelation 9:12](#).

The third woe is coming quickly

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. AT: “The third woe will happen soon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [woe](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:15

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the seventh angel blew his trumpet. Voices in heaven shouted loudly, “Our Lord God and the Christ whom he has appointed can now govern all the people in the world, and they will continue to rule those people forever!”

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the seventh angel sounded his trumpet, and loud voices spoke in heaven and said,
 ”The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ.
 He will reign forever and ever.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The last of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

the seventh angel

This is the last of the seven angels. See how you translated “seventh” in [Revelation 8.1](#). AT: “the final angel” or “angel number seven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

loud voices spoke in heaven and said

The phrase “loud voices” represents speakers who spoke loudly. AT: “speakers in heaven spoke loudly and said”

The kingdom of the world ... the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ

Here “kingdom” refers to the authority to rule the world. AT: “The authority to rule the world ... the authority that belongs to our Lord and his Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the world

This refers to everyone in the world. AT: “everyone in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ

“Our Lord and his Christ are now the rulers of the world”

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [world, worldly](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The twenty-four elders, who sit on their thrones in God's presence, bowed down their faces to the ground and worshiped him. ¹⁷ They said:

”Lord God, you are the one who rules over everything!

You are the one who exists now!

You are the one who has always existed!

We thank you that you have defeated with your power
everyone who has rebelled against you,
and you now rule over all the people in the world.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then the twenty-four elders, who sit on their thrones in the presence of God, fell upon their faces and worshiped God. ¹⁷ They said,

”We give thanks to you, Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was,
because you have taken your great power and have begun to reign. ^[1]

11:17 ^[1]Some copies read *the ruler over all, the one who is and who was, and who is to come*, but most modern versions do not.

translationNotes**twenty-four elders**

“24 elders.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

fell upon their faces

They lay down facing the ground. See how you translated a similar expression in [Revelation 4:10](#). AT: “they bowed down” (See: [Idiom](#))

you, Lord God Almighty, the one who is and who was

These phrases can be stated as sentences. AT: “you, Lord God, the ruler over all. You are the one who is, and you are the one who was” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

the one who is

“the one who exists” or “the one who lives”

who was

“who has always existed” or “who has always lived”

you have taken your great power

What God did with his great power can be stated clearly. AT: “you have defeated with your power everyone who has rebelled against you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [elder, elders](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [God](#)
- [worship](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ The unbelieving people of the nations were angrily raging at you.

As a result you have become very angry with them.

You have decided that this is the right time for you to judge all those who have died.

The time has come for you to reward all your servants who were the prophets and the others who believe in you,

and all those who honor you,

and this includes those who are small and those who are great.

It is time for you to destroy the people who destroy the earth.”

ULB:

¹⁸ The nations were enraged,

but your wrath has come.

The time has come for the dead to be judged

and for you to reward your servants the prophets,

those who are believers, and those who feared your name,

both the unimportant and the mighty.

The time has come for you to destroy those who are destroying the earth.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The twenty-four elders continue praising God.

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” refer to God.

were enraged

“were extremely angry”

your wrath has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. AT: “You are ready to show your anger” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The time has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. AT: “The time is right” or “Now is the time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the prophets, those who are believers, and those who feared your name

This list explains what “your servants” means. These were not three completely different groups of people. The prophets also were believers and feared God’s name. “Name” here is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. AT: “the prophets, those who are believers, and those who fear you” or “the prophets and the others who are believers and fear your name” (See:)

translationWords

- [nation, nations](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 11:19

UDB:

¹⁹ Then God opened his temple in heaven, and I saw in it the sacred chest. Lightning was flashing; it was thundering and rumbling; the earth shook, and large hailstones fell from the sky.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then God's temple in heaven was opened and the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple. There were flashes of lightning, rumblings, crashes of thunder, an earthquake, and a great hailstorm.

translationNotes

Then God's temple in heaven was opened

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Then someone opened God's temple in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I saw the ark of his covenant in his temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

flashes of lightning

Use your language's way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

rumblings, crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

translationWords

- [temple](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 11 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many scholars believe the events of this chapter are both future and past. The author may shift between the events without shifting the tense in which he speaks. Despite this, John speaks as if these events are about to happen.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 12:10-12.

Special concepts in this chapter

Serpent

The reference to Satan as the serpent is intended to have the reader remember the account of the temptation in the Garden of Eden. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The woman is described using many different metaphors, but her identity is unclear. The chapter also speaks about the rise of the antichrist. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [antichrist, antichrists](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“A great sign was seen in heaven”

It is unclear whether this was seen by everybody on earth or whether it was only seen by John in his vision. The translator may have difficulty when the subject is unclear. In English, this is done through the use of the passive voice, but not every language has this construct. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 12:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 12:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then something very important appeared in the sky. It was a woman, whose clothing was the sun. The moon was under her feet. On her head was a wreath of victory that was made of twelve stars. ² She was about to deliver a child, and she cried out because she was suffering pain.

ULB:

¹ A great sign was seen in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and with the moon under her feet, and a crown of twelve stars was on her head. ² She was pregnant, and she was crying out in birth pains, in the anguish of childbirth.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a woman who appears in his vision.

A great sign was seen in heaven

This can be stated in active form. AT: "A great sign appeared in heaven" or "I, John, saw a great sign in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a woman clothed with the sun, and with the moon under her feet

This can be stated in active form. AT: "A woman who was wearing the sun and had the moon under her feet" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a crown of twelve stars

This was apparently a likeness of a wreath made of laurel leaves or olive branches, but with twelve stars included in it.

twelve stars

"12 stars" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [labor, in labor, labor pains](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:3-4**UDB:**

³ Something else very unusual appeared in the sky. It was a huge red dragon. It had seven heads and ten horns. On each of its heads was a royal crown. ⁴ The dragon's tail dragged a third of the stars from the sky and threw them to the earth. The dragon set himself in front of the woman who was about to give birth in order that he might eat her child as soon as it was born.

ULB:

³ Then another sign was seen in heaven: Look! There was a huge red dragon that had seven heads and ten horns, and there were seven crowns on his heads. ⁴ His tail swept away a third of the stars in heaven and hurled them down to the earth. The dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth, he would devour her child.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John describes a dragon that appears in his vision.

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

His tail swept away a third of the stars

“With his tail he swept away a third of the stars”

a third

“one third.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 8:7](#). (See: [Fractions](#))

translationWords

- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- horn, horns, horned
- crown, crowns, crowned
- devour, devours, devoured, devouring

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then she gave birth to a son who is destined to rule all groups of people with complete authority as if he were using an iron rod. God snatched away her child and took him to his throne. ⁶ But the woman fled into the wilderness. She has a place there that God has prepared for her in order that he may take care of her for 1,260 days.

ULB:

⁵ She gave birth to a son, a male child, who would rule all the nations with an iron rod. Her child was snatched away to God and to his throne, ⁶ and the woman fled into the wilderness, where God had prepared a place for her, so she could be taken care of for 1,260 days.

translationNotes

rule all the nations with an iron rod

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling with an iron rod. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:27](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Her child was snatched away to God

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God quickly took her child to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for 1,260 days

“for one thousand two hundred and sixty days” or “for twelve hundred and sixty days” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- son, sons
- children, child
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- nation, nations
- rod, rods
- God
- throne, thrones, enthroned
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Then there was a battle in heaven. Michael and the angels that he commanded fought against the dragon. The dragon and his angels fought back against Michael and his angels. ⁸ But the dragon did not win the battle; nor did God allow the dragon and his angels to stay in heaven any longer. ⁹ Instead, God threw the huge dragon out of heaven. The dragon is the ancient serpent, the one whose names are the Devil and Satan. He is the one who deceives people all over the earth. He was thrown to the earth along with all his angels.

ULB:

⁷ Now there was war in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought back. ⁸ But the dragon was not strong enough to win. So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels. ⁹ The great dragon—that old serpent called the devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world—was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

translationNotes

Now

John uses this word to mark a shift in his account to introduce something else happening in his vision.

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

So there was no longer any place in heaven for him and his angels

“So the dragon and his angels could no longer stay in heaven”

dragon—that old serpent called the devil or Satan, who deceives the whole world—was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him

The information about the serpent can be given in a separate sentence after the statement that it was thrown down to the earth. AT: “dragon was thrown down to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. He is the old serpent who deceives the world and is called the devil or Satan” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

The great dragon ... was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God threw the great dragon ... and his angels out of heaven and sent them to the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Michael](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [world, worldly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then I heard someone in heaven shout loudly,

”Now our God has saved his people by his power, and he rules all people!

Now Christ has begun to rule!

This is because God has thrown the accuser of our fellow believers out of heaven.

He was the one who stood before God day and night and told him that they had done what is wrong.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then I heard a loud voice in heaven:

”Now have come the salvation, the power,

the kingdom of our God,

and the authority of his Christ.

For the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down,

the one who accused them before our God day and night.

translationNotes**I**

The word “I” refers to John.

I heard a loud voice in heaven

The word “voice” refers to someone who speaks. AT: “I heard someone saying loudly from heaven” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now have come the salvation, the power, the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ

God saving people by his power is spoken of as if his salvation and power were things that have come. God’s ruling and Christ’s authority are also spoken of as if they have come. AT: “Now God has saved his people by his power, God rules as king, and his Christ has all authority” (See: [Metaphor](#))

come

“begun to really exist” or “appeared” or “become real.” It is not that these things did not exist before, but now God is revealing them because their time to occur has “come.”

the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down

This is the dragon that was thrown down in [Revelation 12:9](#).

our brothers

Fellow believers are spoken of as if they were brothers. AT: “our fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

day and night

These two parts of the day are used together to mean “all the time” or “without stopping” (See: [Merism](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [God](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Our fellow believers overcame him because the Lamb had shed his blood and died for them and because they spoke the truth about him to other people.

They did not seek to remain alive,

but were willing to let people kill them for speaking the truth about him.

¹² So everyone in heaven should rejoice.

But terrible things will happen to you people who live on the earth and on the ocean because the devil has come down to you.

He is very angry because he knows that he has only a short time before God judges and punishes him.”

ULB:

¹¹ They conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, for they did not love their lives even to death.

¹² Therefore rejoice you heavens,

and all who reside in them!

But woe to the earth and to the sea,

because the devil has gone down to you!

He is filled with terrible anger

because he has only a little time!

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The loud voice from heaven continues to speak.

They conquered him

“They conquered the accuser”

by the blood of the Lamb

The blood refers to his death. AT: “because the lamb had shed his blood and died for them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

by the word of their testimony

The word “testimony” can be expressed with the verb “testify.” Also who they testified about can be stated clearly. AT: “by what they said when they testified to others about Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)) (See: [Synecdoche](#))

even to death

The believers told the truth about Jesus, even though they knew that their enemies might try to kill them because of it. AT: “but they kept testifying even though they knew that they might die for it”

He is filled with terrible anger

The devil is spoken of as if he were a container, and anger is spoken of as if it were a liquid that could be in him. AT: “He is terribly angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- blood
- lamb, Lamb of God
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- love, loves, loving, loved
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- woe
- earth, earthen, earthly
- Satan, devil, evil one
- anger, angered, angry
- know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:13-14

UDB:

¹³ When the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to a son. ¹⁴ But God gave to the woman two wings like the wings of a very large eagle in order that she might fly into the wilderness. There is a place there that God had prepared for her. There God took care of her for three and one-half years. The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there.

ULB:

¹³ When the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child. ¹⁴ But the woman was given the two wings of a great eagle, so that she would flee to the place prepared for her in the wilderness. This was the place where she would be taken care of, for a time, times, and half a time—out of the serpent’s presence.

translationNotes

the dragon realized he had been thrown down to the earth

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the dragon realized that God had thrown him out of heaven and sent him to earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he pursued the woman

“he chased after the woman”

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

time, times, and half a time

“three and half years”

the serpent

This is another way of referring to the dragon.

translationWords

- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [eagle, eagles](#)
- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)
- [serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 12:15-18

UDB:

¹⁵ Then the serpent poured water like a river from his mouth toward the woman in order to sweep her away with the water. ¹⁶ But the ground helped the woman by opening up and swallowing the river that the dragon poured out from his mouth. ¹⁷ Then the dragon was very angry with the woman, so he went away to fight against the rest of her descendants. They are the people who obey God's commandments and who speak the truth about Jesus. ¹⁸ Then the dragon stood on the ocean shore.

ULB:

¹⁵ The serpent poured water out of his mouth like a river, that he would make a flood to sweep her away. ¹⁶ But the earth helped the woman. The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth. ¹⁷ Then the dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to wage war with the rest of her descendants, those who obey God's commandments and hold to the testimony about Jesus. ¹⁸ Then the dragon stood on the sand of the seashore.

translationNotes

serpent

This is the same being as the dragon mentioned earlier in [Revelation 12:9](#).

like a river

The water flowed from his mouth like a river flows. AT: "in large volume" (See: [Simile](#))

to sweep her away

"to wash her away"

The earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon was pouring out of his mouth

The earth is spoken of as if it were a living thing, and a hole in the earth is spoken of as if it were a mouth that could drink up the water. AT: "A hole in the ground opened up and the water went down into the hole" (See: [Personification](#))

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

hold to the testimony about Jesus

The word “testimony” can be translated as a verb. AT: “continue to testify about Jesus”

translationWords

- serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers
- water, waters, watered, watering
- flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters
- earth, earthen, earthly
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 13:10, which is quoted from the OT.

Special concepts in this chapter

A lethal wound

Many scholars believe this is a prophecy about the death of the antichrist. They believe the antichrist will mimic or counterfeit the resurrection of Jesus. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [antichrist](#), [antichrists](#) and [resurrection](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The beast

Many scholars believe this is a metaphorical way to refer to the antichrist. This is very significant for proper understanding of this passage. This is used in contrast to the lamb, which is a reference to Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#), [Personification](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Another beast

Many scholars believe this second beast is a prophet or priest of the antichrist. He is capable of performing many wondrous miracles and gets many people to worship the antichrist.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Unknown animals

This chapter uses a great number of unknown animals. Many of these animals are used in a symbolic way but their meaning is imprecise. This will cause great difficulties for translators. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 13:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 13:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I saw a beast come up out of the ocean. It had ten horns and seven heads. On each of its horns there was a royal crown. On each of its heads there was a name that insulted God. ² This beast was like a leopard. But its feet were like the feet of a bear, and its mouth was like the mouth of a lion. The dragon made the beast very powerful. He gave him the authority to rule over people as king.

ULB:

¹ Then I saw a beast coming up out of the sea. It had ten horns and seven heads. On its horns were ten crowns, and on each of its heads was a blasphemous name. ² This beast I saw was like a leopard. Its feet were like a bear's feet, and its mouth was like a lion's mouth. The dragon gave his power to it, and his throne, and his great authority to rule.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a beast who appears in his vision. The word "I" here refers to John.

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

The dragon gave his power to it

The dragon made the beast as powerful as he was. He did not lose his power, however, by giving it to the beast.

his power ... his throne, and his great authority to rule

These are three ways of referring to his authority, and together they emphasize that the authority was great.

his throne

The word "throne" here refers to the dragon's authority to rule as king. AT: "his royal authority" or "his authority to rule as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [horn, horns, horned](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies](#)
- [leopard, leopards](#)
- [bear, bears](#)
- [lions, lion, lioness, lionesses](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:3-4**UDB:**

³ One of the heads of the beast looked as if someone had wounded it so that it died. But its wound had healed. As a result, all the people of the earth marveled at the beast and followed it. ⁴ They also worshiped the dragon because he had given the beast authority to rule over them. They also worshiped the beast and said, “No one is as powerful as the beast! Who could ever fight against it?”

ULB:

³ One of the beast’s heads appeared to have been killed, but its fatal wound was healed. The whole earth marveled as they followed the beast. ⁴ They also worshiped the dragon, for he had given his authority to the beast. They worshiped the beast, too, and kept saying, “Who is like the beast?” and “Who can fight against it?”

translationNotes**but its fatal wound was healed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “but its fatal wound healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

fatal wound

“deadly wound.” This is an injury that is serious enough to cause a person to die.

The whole earth

The word “earth” refers to the people on it. AT: “All the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

followed the beast

“obeyed the beast”

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

he had given his authority to the beast

“he had caused the beast to have as much authority as he had”

Who is like the beast?

This question shows how amazed they were about the beast. AT: “No one is as powerful as the beast!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Who can fight against it?

This question shows how much the people feared the power of the beast. AT: “No one could ever fight against the beast and win!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders](#)
- [worship](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ God allowed the beast to speak proudly and to insult him. God also allowed it to rule the people for forty-two months. ⁶ When it spoke, it insulted God, his name, the place where he lives, and all who live in heaven.

ULB:

⁵ The beast was given a mouth that could speak proud words and blasphemies. It was permitted to exercise authority for forty-two months. ⁶ So the beast opened its mouth to speak blasphemies against God—blaspheming his name, the place where he lives, and those who live in heaven.

translationNotes**The beast was given ... It was permitted**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God gave the beast ... God permitted the beast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The beast was given a mouth that could speak

Being given a mouth refers to being allowed to speak. AT: “The beast was allowed to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

forty-two months

“42 months” (See: [Numbers](#))

to speak blasphemies against God

“to say disrespectful things about God”

blaspheming his name, the place where he lives, and those who live in heaven

These phrases tell how the beast spoke blasphemies against God.

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [proud, proudly, pride, prideful](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ God also allowed the beast to fight against his people and conquer them. It had authority to rule over every tribe, over every nation, over the speakers of every language, and over every people group. ⁸ All the people living on earth will worship it. They are the people whose names are not in the Book of Life that belongs to the Lamb who had been killed. These are the names of the people that he wrote in the book before God created the world, the names of those who belong to God.

ULB:

⁷ The beast was permitted to wage war with the believers and to conquer them. Also, authority was given to it over every tribe, people, language, and nation. ⁸ All who live on the earth will worship it, everyone whose name was not written, since the creation of the world, in the Book of Life, which belongs to the Lamb, who had been slaughtered.

translationNotes**authority was given to it**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God gave authority to the beast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every tribe, people, language, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in [Revelation 5:9](#).

will worship it

“will worship the beast”

everyone whose name was not written ... in the Book of Life

This phrase clarifies who on the earth will worship the beast. It can be stated in active form. AT: “those whose names the Lamb did not write ... in The Book of Life” or “those whose names were not ... in the Book of Life” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

since the creation of the world

“when God created the world”

the Lamb

A “lamb” is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

who had been slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom the people slaughtered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [worship](#)
- [create, creates, created, creation, creator](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God. ¹⁰ If God has decided that some people will be captured by their enemies, they will be captured. If God has decided that some people will die in war, they will die in war. So God's people must endure suffering and be faithful to him.

ULB:

⁹ If anyone has an ear, let him listen.

¹⁰ If anyone is to be taken into captivity,
into captivity he will go.

If anyone is to be killed with the sword,
with the sword he will be killed.

Here is a call for patient endurance and faith for those who are holy.

translationNotes**General Information:**

These verses are a break from John's account of his vision. Here he give a warning to the people reading his account.

If anyone has an ear

Being willing to listen is spoken of as having an ear. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). AT: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing, listen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

If anyone is to be taken

This expression means that someone has decided who should be taken. If needed, translators may state clearly who decided it. AT: "If God has decided that someone should be taken" or "If it is God's will that someone should be taken" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If anyone is to be taken into captivity

This can be stated in active form. The noun "captivity" can be stated with the verb "capture." AT: "If it is God's will for the enemy to capture a certain person" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

into captivity he will go

The noun “captivity” can be stated with the verb “capture.” AT: “he will be captured” or “the enemy will capture him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

If anyone is to be killed with the sword

This can be stated in active form. AT: “If it is God’s will for the enemy to kill a certain person with a sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with the sword

The sword represents war. AT: “in war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he will be killed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the enemy will kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Here is a call for patient endurance and faith for those who are holy

“Those who are holy must endure patiently and be faithful”

translationWords

- [captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [patient, patiently, patience, impatient](#)
- [endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance](#)
- [faith](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Then I saw another beast come up from the earth. It had two small horns on its head as a sheep has. But it spoke harshly as a dragon does. ¹² It rules people with power in order to do what the first beast wants. It forces the people who live on the earth to worship the first beast, that is, the beast that almost died but whose wound was healed.

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. It had two horns like a lamb, and it spoke like a dragon. ¹² It exercised all the authority of the first beast in its presence, and it made the earth and those who live on it worship the first beast—the one whose lethal wound had been healed.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John begins to describe another beast who appears in his vision.

it spoke like a dragon

Harsh speech is spoken of as if it were the roar of a dragon. AT: “it spoke harshly like a dragon speaks” (See: [Simile](#))

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the earth and those who live on it

“everyone on the earth”

the one whose lethal wound had been healed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the one who had a lethal wound that healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

lethal wound

“deadly wound.” This was an injury that was serious enough that it could have made him die.

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [horn, horns, horned](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [worship](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The second beast also did awesome miracles, even causing fire from the sky to fall to earth while people watched. ¹⁴ He did these miracles on behalf of the first beast. By doing that, he deceived the people on the earth so that they thought they should worship the first beast. But this happened only because God allowed it to happen. The second beast told the people living on earth to make an idol to represent the first beast, the one that was alive, even though someone had killed him with a sword.

ULB:

¹³ It performed mighty miracles. It even made fire come down on the earth from heaven in front of people. ¹⁴ By the signs it was permitted to do, it deceived those who lived on the earth. It told them to make an image in honor of the beast that had the sword wound but lived.

translationNotes

It performed

“The beast from the earth performed”

translationWords

- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ God allowed the second beast to breathe life into that idol in order that the idol might speak. And the beast commanded that whoever refused to worship the idol should be killed. ¹⁶ The second beast also required that people should write the first beast's name on the right hand or on the forehead of everyone, whether these were important people or unimportant people, rich or poor, free or slave. Everyone! ¹⁷ The second beast required this so that people could not buy anything or sell anything if they did not have the mark, that is, the name of the beast or the number representing its name.

ULB:

¹⁵ It was permitted to give breath to the beast's image so that the image would even speak and cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed. ¹⁶ It also forced everyone, unimportant and mighty, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on the right hand or on the forehead. ¹⁷ It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast, that is, the number representing its name.

translationNotes**It was permitted**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God permitted the beast from the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to give breath to the beast's image

Here the word "breath" represents life. AT: "to give life to the beast's image" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the beast's image

This is the image of the first beast that had been mentioned.

cause all who refused to worship the beast to be killed

"put to death anyone who refused to worship the first beast"

It also forced everyone

"The beast from the earth also forced everyone"

It was impossible for anyone to buy or sell unless he had the mark of the beast

“People could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast.” The implicit information that the beast from the earth commanded it can be stated clearly. AT: “He commanded that people could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast.

translationWords

- [breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)
- [worship](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 13:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ You must think wisely to understand the meaning of the mark. Anyone who thinks wisely should understand that the number represents mankind. It is 666.

ULB:

¹⁸ This calls for wisdom. If anyone has insight, let him calculate the number of the beast. For it is the number of a human being. Its number is 666.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This verse is a break from John's account of his vision. Here he gives another warning to the people reading his account.

This calls for wisdom

"Wisdom is needed" or "You need to be wise about this"

If anyone has insight

The word "insight" can be translated with the verb "understand." AT: "If anyone is able to understand things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

let him calculate the number of the beast

"he should discern what the number of the beast means" or "he should figure out what the number of the beast means"

is the number of a human being

Possible meanings are 1) the number represents one person or 2) the number represents all of humanity.

666

"six hundred sixty-six" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Victorious over the beast”

This is victory in the spiritual battles occurring during this time. While most spiritual battles cannot be seen, the book of Revelation pictures a time of great spiritual battles openly occurring. (See: [spirit](#), [spirits](#), [spiritual](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Mark of the beast

John has spent some time discussing the mark given by the beast. Many scholars believe this chapter teaches that those who receive this mark will face eternal punishment in hell. (See: [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#) and [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Harvest

This is a common image used in scripture. The harvest illustrates a time when good things come to fruition. It is commonly used to refer to people coming to faith in Jesus, but this is not how John uses it here. It is used to describe the culmination of God’s plans. (See: [faith](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 14:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 14:1-2

UDB:

¹ But then I saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion in Jerusalem. With him were 144,000 people. His name and his Father's name had been written on their foreheads. ² I heard a sound from heaven, which was as loud as the sound of a huge waterfall or mighty thunder. It also sounded like many people playing on harps.

ULB:

¹ I looked and saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion. With him were 144,000 who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads. ² I heard a voice from heaven sounding like a roar of many waters and loud thunder. The sound I heard was also like harpists playing their harps.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. There are 144,000 believers standing before the Lamb.

General Information:

The word "I" refers to John.

Lamb

A "lamb" is a young sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

144,000

"one hundred forty-four thousand." See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads

This can be stated in active form. AT: "on whose foreheads the Lamb and his Father had written their names" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

a voice from heaven

“a sound from heaven”

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:3-5

UDB:

³ The 144,000 people were singing a new song while they stood in front of the throne, in front of the four living creatures, and in front of the elders. Only the 144,000 people, the ones whom the Lamb had redeemed from among the people on the earth, could learn that song. No one else could learn that song. ⁴ Those 144,000 are the ones who did not corrupt themselves with women; for they never had sexual relations. They are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These are the ones whom the Lamb had redeemed for God from among the people of earth; they are the ones whom the Lamb had first offered to God and to himself. ⁵ These people never lied when they spoke, and they never acted immorally.

ULB:

³ They sang a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders. No one could learn the song except for the 144,000 who had been bought from the earth. ⁴ These are the ones that have not defiled themselves with women, for they have kept themselves sexually pure. It is these who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These were bought out of mankind as firstfruits for God and for the Lamb. ⁵ No lie was found in their mouth; they are blameless. ^[1]

14:5 ^[1]Some older copies add, *before the throne of God*.

translationNotes

They sang a new song

“The 144,000 people sang a new song.” This explains what the sound was that John heard. AT: “That sound was a new song that they sang”

the four living creatures

“living being” or “living thing.” See how you translated “living creature” in [Revelation 4:6](#)

elders

This refers to the twenty-four elders around the throne. See how you translated “elders” in [Revelation 4:4](#).

144,000

“one hundred forty-four thousand.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

have not defiled themselves with women

Possible meanings are 1) “have never had immoral sexual relations with a woman” or 2) “have never had sexual relations with a woman.” Defiling oneself with women may be a symbol of worshipping idols.

they have kept themselves sexually pure

Possible meanings are 1) “they did not have sexual relations with a woman who was not their wife” or 2) “they are virgins.”

follow the Lamb wherever he goes

Doing what the Lamb does is spoken of as following him. AT: “they do whatever the Lamb does” or “they obey the Lamb” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bought out of mankind as firstfruits

“Firstfruits” here is a metaphor for the first offering to be made to God in celebration of harvest. AT: “purchased out of the midst of the rest of mankind as a special celebration of salvation” (See: [Metaphor](#))

No lie was found in their mouth

Their “mouth” refers to what they said.” AT: “They never lied when they spoke” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [elder, elders](#)
- [defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [God](#)
- [blameless](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then I saw another angel flying between the sky and heaven. He was bringing God’s eternal good news to earth in order that he might proclaim it to people who live on the earth. He will proclaim it to every nation, to every tribe, to speakers of every language, and to every people group. ⁷ He said in a loud voice, “Honor God and praise him because it is now time for him to judge everyone! Worship him because he is the one who created the heaven, the earth, the ocean, and the springs of water.”

ULB:

⁶ I saw another angel flying in midair, who had the eternal message of good news to proclaim to those who live on the earth—to every nation, tribe, language, and people. ⁷ He called out with a loud voice, “Fear God and give him glory. For the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him, the one who made the heaven, the earth, the sea, and the springs of water.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This is the first of three angels who proclaim judgment on the earth.

every nation, tribe, language, and people

This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in [Revelation 5:9](#).

the hour of his judgment has come

Here “the hour” represents the time that has been chosen for something, and the hour having “come” is a metaphor for now being the chosen time. The idea of “judgment” can be expressed with a verb. AT: “now is the time that God has chosen for judgment” or “it is now the time for God to judge people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)
- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)

- nation, nations
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fear, fears, afraid
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- worship

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:8**UDB:**

⁸ Another angel, a second one, came after him saying, “The very evil city of Babylon is now completely destroyed! Babylon made people of all the nations engage with her in the passion of sexual immorality. Babylon is like someone who gives another person too much wine to drink!”

ULB:

⁸ Another angel—a second angel—followed, saying, “Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great, who persuaded all the nations to drink the wine of her immoral passion.”

translationNotes**Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great**

The angel speaks of Babylon having been destroyed as if it had fallen. AT: “Babylon the great has been destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Babylon the great

“Babylon the large city” or “the important city of Babylon.” This was probably a symbol for the city of Rome, which was large, wealthy, and sinful. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

who persuaded

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a person, instead of a city filled with people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

to drink the wine of her immoral passion

This is a symbol for participating in her sexually immoral passion. AT: “to be sexually immoral like her” or “to get drunk like her in sexual sin” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

her immoral passion

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Another angel, a third one, came afterward, saying in a loud voice, "If people worship the beast and its image or allow its mark to be put on their foreheads or on their hands, ¹⁰ God will be angry with them and his anger will be like strong wine that he will make them drink. He will torment them in burning sulfur in the presence of his holy angels and in the presence of the Lamb.

ULB:

⁹ Another angel—a third angel—followed them, saying with a loud voice, "If anyone worships the beast and his image, and receives a mark on his forehead or on his hand, ¹⁰ he will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath, the wine that has been poured undiluted into the cup of his anger. The person who drinks it will be tormented with fire and sulfur before God's holy angels and before the Lamb.

translationNotes**with a loud voice**

"loudly"

will also drink some of the wine of God's wrath

Drinking the wine of God's wrath is a symbol for being punished by God. AT: "will also drink some of the wine that represents God's wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

that has been poured undiluted

This can be translated in active form. AT: "that God has poured full strength" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that has been poured undiluted

This means that the wine has no water mixed into it. It is strong, and a person who drinks much of it will get very drunk. As a symbol, it means that God will be extremely angry, not just a little angry. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

cup of his anger

This symbolic cup holds the wine that represents God's anger. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- voice, voices
- worship
- beast, beasts
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- wrath, fury
- anger, angered, angry
- torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- sulfur, sulfurous
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- lamb, Lamb of God

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The smoke from the fire that torments them will rise forever. God will torment them continually, day and night. This is what will happen to the people who worship the beast and its image or who allow its name to be written on them.” ¹² So God’s people, those who obey what God commands and who trust in Jesus, must faithfully continue obeying and trusting him.

ULB:

¹¹ The smoke from their torment goes up forever and ever, and they have no rest day or night—these worshipers of the beast and his image, and everyone who receives the mark of his name. ¹² Here is a call for the patient endurance of those who are holy, those who obey the commandments of God and faith in Jesus.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The third angel continues to speak.

The smoke from their torment

The phrase “their torment” refers to the fire that torments them. AT: “The smoke from the fire that torments them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they have no rest

“they have no relief” or “the torment does not stop”

day or night

These two parts of the day are used to refer to all of the time. AT: “ever” (See: [Merism](#))

Here is a call for the patient endurance of those who are holy

“Those who are holy must endure patiently and be faithful.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 13:10](#).

translationWords

- torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- rest, rests, rested, resting, restless
- worship
- beast, beasts
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- call, calls, calling, called
- patient, patiently, patience, impatient
- endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:13**UDB:**

¹³ Then I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Write this: How fortunate from now on are those who die in union with the Lord.” God’s Spirit says, “Yes, after they die, they will no longer have to endure suffering. Instead, they will rest, and everyone will know the good things that they have done.”

ULB:

¹³ I heard a voice from heaven say, “Write this: Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord.” “Yes,” says the Spirit, “so that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds will follow them.”

translationNotes**the dead who die**

“those who die”

who die in the Lord

“who are united to the Lord and die.” This may refer to people who are killed by their enemies. AT: “who die because they are united to the Lord”

labors

difficulties and sufferings

their deeds will follow them

These deeds are spoken of as if they were alive and able to follow those who did them. Possible meanings are 1) “others will know the good deeds these people have done” or 2) “God will reward them for their deeds” (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

- [rest, rests, rested, resting, restless](#)
- [labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then I saw another surprising thing. It was a white cloud, and on the cloud someone was sitting who looked like the Son of Man. He was wearing a golden crown on his head. In his hand he held a sharp sickle. ¹⁵ Still another angel came out of the temple in heaven. In a loud voice, he said to the one who was sitting on the cloud, “The time has come to reap the grain on the earth, so with your sickle reap the grain because the grain is ripe.” ¹⁶ Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and he harvested the earth.

ULB:

¹⁴ I looked, and there was a white cloud. Seated on the cloud was one like a son of man. He had a golden crown on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand. ¹⁵ Then another angel came out of the temple and called with a loud voice to the one sitting on the cloud: “Take your sickle and start to reap. For the time to reap has come, since the harvest of the earth is ripe.” ¹⁶ Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This part is about the Son of Man harvesting the earth. Harvesting the grain is a symbol of God’s judging people. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

one like a son of man

This expression describes a human figure, someone who looks human. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:13](#). (See: [Simile](#))

golden crown

This was the likeness of a wreath of olive branches or laurel leaves, hammered out in gold. Examples actually made of leaves were given to victorious athletes to wear on their heads.

sickle

a tool with a curved blade used for cutting grass, grain, and vines (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

came out of the temple

“came out of the heavenly temple”

the time to reap has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the earth was harvested

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he harvested the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [temple](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping](#)
- [time, timely, times, untimely](#)
- [harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Another angel came out of the sanctuary in heaven. He also held a sharp sickle. ¹⁸ From the altar came still another angel. He is the one who takes care of the fire of the altar. He said in a loud voice to the angel who held the sickle, “With your sickle cut off the clusters of grapes in the vineyards on the earth! Then gather the clusters of grapes together because its grapes are ripe!”

ULB:

¹⁷ Another angel came out from the temple in heaven; he also had a sharp sickle. ¹⁸ Still another angel came out from the incense altar, who had authority over the fire. He called out with a loud voice to the one who had the sharp sickle, “Take your sharp sickle and gather in the clusters of grapes from the vines of the earth, for their grapes are now ripe.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John continues describing his vision about the earth being harvested.

who had authority over the fire

Here “authority over” refers to responsibility to tend the fire.

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [temple](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [grape, grapes, grapevine](#)
- [vine, vines](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 14:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ So the angel swung his sickle on the earth. Then he threw the grapes into the huge place where God will angrily punish. ²⁰ God trampled the grapes in the winepress outside the city, and blood came out! The blood flowed in a stream so deep that it reached up to the bridles of the horses and extended for three hundred kilometers.

ULB:

¹⁹ The angel swung his sickle to the earth and gathered the grape harvest of the earth. He threw it into the great wine vat of God's wrath. ²⁰ The winepress was stomped outside the city, and blood poured out from it up to the height of a horse's bridle, for 1,600 stadia.

translationNotes**great wine vat ... winepress**

These refer to the same container.

the great wine vat of God's wrath

"the large wine vat where God will show his wrath"

up to the height of a horse's bridle

"as high as the bridle in a horse's mouth"

bridle

a device made of leather straps that goes around a horse's head and is used for directing the horse

1,600 stadia

"one thousand six hundred stadia" or "sixteen hundred stadia." A "stadium" is 185 meters. In modern measures this would be about "300 kilometers" or "200 miles." (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [grape, grapes, grapevine](#)

- [harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [winepress](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The events and pictures described in this chapter occur in heaven.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 15:3-4.

Special concepts in this chapter

“The most holy place, in which was the tent of witness, was open in heaven”

This statement has led some scholars to believe that the Jewish temple reflected a scene in heaven. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Songs

Heaven is often described as a place where people sing. These are songs of worship to God. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is continually worshiped.

Links:

- [Revelation 15:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 15:1**UDB:**

¹ Something else very unusual appeared in the sky. I saw seven angels, whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways. This is the last time that God will punish people this way, for it will fully show how angry he is.

ULB:

¹ Then I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvelous: There were seven angels with seven plagues, which are the final plagues, for with them the wrath of God will be completed.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This verse is a summary of what will happen in 15:6-16:21.

great and marvelous

These words have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. AT: “something that greatly amazed me” (See: [Doublet](#))

seven angels with seven plagues

“seven angels who had authority to send seven plagues on the earth”

which are the final plagues

“and after them, there will not be any more plagues”

for with them the wrath of God will be completed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “for these plagues will complete the wrath of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for with them the wrath of God will be completed

Possible meanings are 1) these plagues will show all of God’s anger or 2) after these plagues, God will no longer be angry.

translationWords

- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders
- angel, angels, archangel
- plague, plagues
- wrath, fury
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 15:2

UDB:

² I saw what looked like an ocean that looked as though it was made of glass and mixed with fire. I also saw the people who had overcome the beast by not worshipping it or its image, and by not allowing its servant to mark them with the number that represents the beast's name. They were standing by the ocean (that was as clear as glass), and they were holding the harps that God gave them.

ULB:

² I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire. Standing beside the sea were those who had been victorious over the beast and his image, and over the number representing his name. They were holding harps given to them by God.

translationNotes

General Information:

Here John begins to describe his vision of the people who had been victorious over the beast and who are praising God.

sea of glass

How it was like glass or a sea can be stated clearly. Possible meanings are 1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. AT: "a sea that was as smooth as glass" or 2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:6](#). AT: "glass that was spread out like a sea." (See: [Metaphor](#))

who had been victorious over the beast and his image

How they were victorious can be stated clearly. AT: "who had been victorious over the beast and his image by not worshipping them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

over the number representing his name

How they were victorious over the number can be stated clearly. AT: "over the number representing his name by not being marked with that number" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the number representing his name

This refers to the number described in [Revelation 13:18](#).

translationWords

- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- beast, beasts
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- harp, harps, harpist, harpists
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 15:3-4**UDB:**

³ They were singing a song like God's servant Moses sang long ago. They sang this to praise the Lamb in this way:

”Lord God, who rules over everything,

whatever you do is powerful and marvelous!

You always act righteously and truthfully.

You are king forever over all the groups of people!

⁴ O Lord, everyone will fear you and honor you because you alone are holy.

All kinds of people will come and bow down before you

because you have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way.”

ULB:

³ They were singing the song of Moses, the servant of God, the song of the Lamb:

”Great and marvelous are your deeds,

Lord God, the Almighty.

Just and true are your ways,

King of the nations.

⁴ Who will not fear you, Lord,

and glorify your name?

For you alone are holy.

All nations will come

and worship before you

because your righteous deeds have been revealed.”

translationNotes**They were singing**

“Those who had been victorious over the beast were singing”

Who will not fear you, Lord, and glorify your name?

This question is used to show their amazement at how great and glorious the Lord is. It can be expressed as an exclamation. AT: “Lord, everyone will fear you and glorify your name!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

glorify your name

The phrase “your name” refers to God. AT: “glorify you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

your righteous deeds have been revealed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you have made everyone know about your righteous deeds” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- Moses
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- lamb, Lamb of God
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders
- works, deeds, work, acts
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- Almighty
- just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification
- true, truth, truths
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- nation, nations
- fear, fears, afraid
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- name, names, named
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- worship
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 15:5-6

UDB:

⁵ After this I saw that the temple in heaven was open, where the sacred tent was. ⁶ The seven angels whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven different ways came out of the very holy place. The angels were dressed in clean, white linen garments; they wore gold bands around their chests.

ULB:

⁵ After these things I looked, and the temple having the tent of witness was open in heaven. ⁶ Out of the most holy place came the seven angels holding the seven plagues. They were clothed with pure, bright linen and had golden sashes around their chests.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The seven angels with the seven plagues come out of the most holy place. They were spoken of previously in [Revelation 15:1](#).

After these things

“After the people finished singing”

the seven angels holding the seven plagues

These angels were seen as holding seven plagues because in [Revelation 17:7](#) they are given seven bowls full of the wrath of God.

linen

a fine, expensive cloth made from flax

sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth worn on the upper body.

translationWords

- [temple](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- angel, angels, archangel
- plague, plagues
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed
- pure, purify, purification
- gold, golden

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 15:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ One of the four living creatures gave each of the seven angels a golden bowl filled with wine. The wine symbolized that God, who lives forever, was very angry with the people who had rebelled against him and was going to punish them. ⁸ The temple was filled with smoke that symbolized the presence of the glorious and all-powerful God. No one was able to enter the temple until the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways.

ULB:

⁷ One of the four living creatures gave to the seven angels seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever. ⁸ The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power. No one could enter it until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.

translationNotes**the four living creatures**

“living being” or “living thing.” See how you translated “living creatures” in [Revelation 4:6](#)

seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God

The image of the wine in the bowls can be stated clearly. The word “wrath” here refers to punishment. The wine is a symbol for punishment. AT: “seven gold bowls full of the wine that represents the wrath of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Symbolic Language](#))

until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed

“until the seven angels finished sending the seven plagues to the earth”

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [creature, creatures](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [God](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [temple](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)

- [power, powers](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter forms the conclusion of a major section of the book of Revelation, ending the period of wrath or great judgment by God. (See: [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#))

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 16:5-7.

Special concepts in this chapter

“The most holy place”

This statement has led some scholars to believe that the Jewish temple reflected a scene in heaven. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven bowl judgments

This chapter reveals judgments called the seven bowl judgments. The judgments are pictured as being poured out, emphasizing their quickness and totality. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The tone of this chapter is meant to shock the reader. This should not be minimized in translation.

Armageddon

This is a word in Hebrew, and it is used as the name of a place. John transliterates the sounds of this word by writing them with Greek letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate it using the letters of the target language.

Links:

- [Revelation 16:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 16:1

UDB:

¹ In the vision I heard someone in the temple speak in a loud voice to the angels who had the seven bowls. He said, “Go from here and pour out on the earth the wine in the seven bowls. This will make the people suffer because God is angry with them.”

ULB:

¹ I heard a loud voice call out of the temple and say to the seven angels, “Go and pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God’s wrath.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the part of the vision about the seven angels with the seven plagues. The seven plagues are the seven bowls of God’s wrath.

I heard

The word “I” refers to John.

bowls of God’s wrath

The image of the wine in the bowls can be stated clearly. The word “wrath” here refers to punishment. The wine is a symbol for punishment. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 15:7](#). AT: “bowls full of the wine that represents God’s wrath” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- voice, voices
- temple
- angel, angels, archangel
- earth, earthen, earthly
- God
- wrath, fury

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:2

UDB:

² So the first angel went and poured out on the earth what was contained in his bowl. As a result, horrible and painful sores broke out on the people who had allowed the beast's servants to write the beast's name on them, those who had worshiped the beast's image.

ULB:

² The first angel went and poured out his bowl on the earth; ugly and painful sores came on the people who had the mark of the beast, those who worshiped his image.

translationNotes

poured out his bowl

The word "bowl" refers to what is in it. AT: "poured out the wine from his bowl" or "poured out God's wrath from his bowl" (See: [Metonymy](#))

painful sores

"painful wounds." These could be infections from diseases or injuries that have not healed.

mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in [Revelation 13:17](#).

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [worship](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:3

UDB:

³ Then the second angel poured out upon the ocean what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water changed its appearance, and it turned into blood, but not living blood. It was like the blood of a dead man, and every creature that lived in the ocean died.

ULB:

³ The second angel poured out his bowl into the sea. It became blood, like the blood of a dead person, and every living thing in the sea died.

translationNotes

poured out his bowl

The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sea

This refers to all the salt water lakes and oceans. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [blood](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ Then the third angel poured out upon the rivers and water springs what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water in the rivers and springs turned into blood. ⁵ I heard the angel who has power over the waters say to God, "O God, you exist and have always existed. You are the holy one. You are a fair judge of people. ⁶ The people who rebelled against you murdered your holy people and the prophets. So you are just in punishing them by giving them blood to drink. This is what they deserve." ⁷ Then I heard someone at the altar answer, "Yes, Lord God, you who rule over everything, you punish people rightly and justly."

ULB:

⁴ The third angel poured out his bowl into the rivers and the springs of water, and they became blood. ⁵ I heard the angel of the waters say,

"You are righteous—the one who is and who was, the Holy One—
because you have judged these things. ^[1]

⁶ Because they poured out the blood of the believers and prophets,
you have given them blood to drink;
it is what they deserve."

⁷ I heard the altar reply,

"Yes, Lord God Almighty,
your judgments are true and righteous."

16:5 ^[1]Some older copies read, *You are righteous, Lord—the one who is and who was and who is to be, because you have judged these things.*

translationNotes**poured out his bowl**

The word "bowl" refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: "poured out the wine from his bowl" or "poured out God's wrath from his bowl" (See: [Metonymy](#))

rivers and the springs of water

This refers to all bodies of fresh water. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the angel of the waters

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the third angel who was in charge of pouring out God's wrath on the rivers and springs of water or 2) this was another angel who was in charge of all the waters.

You are righteous

"You" refers to God. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the one who is and who was

"God who is and who was." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:4](#).

they poured out the blood of the believers and prophets

Here "poured out the blood" means killed. AT: "evil people murdered the believers and prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you have given them blood to drink

God will make the evil people drink the waters that he turned to blood.

I heard the altar reply

The word "altar" here refers perhaps to someone at the altar. "I heard someone at the altar reply" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing
- water, waters, watered, watering
- blood
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Holy One
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
-
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- altar, altars
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- Almighty
- true, truth, truths

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Then the fourth angel poured out on the sun what was contained in his bowl. He was given permission to make the sun so hot that it would scorch people with fire. ⁹ So the people were severely burned, and they said evil things about God because he had the power to make them suffer in these ways. But they still refused to turn away from their evil behavior and refused to praise him.

ULB:

⁸ The fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was given permission to scorch the people with fire. ⁹ They were scorched by the terrible heat, and they blasphemed the name of God, who has the power over these plagues. They did not repent or give him glory.

translationNotes

poured out his bowl

The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was given permission to scorch the people

John speaks about the sun as if it were a person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “and caused the sun to severely burn the people” (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

They were scorched by the terrible heat

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The extreme heat burned them badly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they blasphemed the name of God

Here the name of God represents God. AT: “they blasphemed God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God, who has the power over these plagues

This phrase reminds readers of something they already know about God. It helps to explain why the people were blaspheming God. AT: “God because he has the power over these plagues” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

the power over these plagues

This refers to the power to inflict these plagues on people, and the power to stop the plagues. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ When the fifth angel poured out on the throne of the beast what was contained in his bowl, it became dark where the beast ruled. So the beast and the people whom the beast ruled were biting their tongues because they were suffering intense pain. ¹¹ They insulted God who rules in heaven because their sores were so painful. But they refused to stop doing the evil things that they were doing.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then the fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and darkness covered its kingdom. They chewed on their tongues because of the pain. ¹¹ They blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pain and sores, and they still refused to repent of what they had done.

translationNotes

poured out his bowl

The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the throne of the beast

This is where the beast reigns from. It may refer to the capital city of his kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))

darkness covered its kingdom

“Darkness” here is a metaphor, in which ungodliness is like a blanket, obstructing everything from God’s influence. AT: “ungodliness was over all its kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

They chewed ... They blasphemed

This refers to the people in the beast’s kingdom.

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)

- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- repent, repents, repented, repentance

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:12-14

UDB:

¹² Then the sixth angel poured out on the Euphrates River what was contained in his bowl. The water in the river dried up so that the rulers from the eastern countries could cross it with their armies. ¹³ Then I saw evil spirits that looked like frogs. One came out of the mouth of the dragon, one from the mouth of the beast, and one from the mouth of the false prophet. ¹⁴ Those spirits were demons who were able to perform miracles. They went out to the rulers of the whole world in order to gather their armies. This is so that they will fight on the important day when Almighty God punishes his enemies.

ULB:

¹² The sixth angel poured out his bowl into the great river, the Euphrates. Its water was dried up in order to prepare the way for the kings that would come from the east. ¹³ I saw three unclean spirits that looked like frogs coming out of the mouths of the dragon, of the beast, and of the false prophet. ¹⁴ For they are spirits of demons performing miraculous signs. They were going out to the kings of the whole world in order to gather them together for the battle on the great day of God Almighty.

translationNotes

poured out his bowl

The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Euphrates. Its water was dried up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Euphrates. Its water dried up” or “the Euphrates, and caused its water to dry up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

looked like frogs

A frog is a small animal that lives near water. Jews considered them unclean animals.

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- Euphrates River, the River
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit
- beast, beasts
- false prophet, false prophets
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- world, worldly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ (I heard the Lord Jesus say, “You must listen carefully to me: I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief. So I will be happy with those who stay alert and keep on living in the right way so that they will not be ashamed. They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on so that he will not be ashamed in front of other people.”) ¹⁶ The evil spirits will gather the rulers at a place named in the Hebrew language Armageddon.

ULB:

¹⁵ (“Look! I am coming as a thief! Blessed is the one who keeps watching, keeping his garments on so that he will not go out naked and they see his shameful condition.”) ¹⁶ They brought them together at the place that is called Armageddon in Hebrew.

translationNotes

General Information:

Verse 15 is a break from the main story line of John’s vision. These are words spoken by Jesus. The story line continues in verse 16.

Look! I am coming ... his shameful condition

This is in parentheses to show that it is not part of the story line in the vision. Rather, this is something that the Lord Jesus said. It can be stated clearly that the Lord Jesus said this, as in the UDB. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I am coming as a thief

Jesus will come at a time when people do not expect him, just as a thief comes when not expected. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 3:3](#). (See: [Simile](#))

keeping his garments on

Living the right way is spoken of as keeping one’s clothes on. AT: “doing what is right, like keeping his clothes on” (See: [Metaphor](#))

keeping his garments on

Some versions translate, “keeping his garments with him.”

they see his shameful condition

Here the word “they” refers to other people.

They brought them together

“The spirits of the demons brought the kings and their armies together”

the place that is called

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the place that people call” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Armageddon

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful](#)
- [shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out into the air what was contained in his bowl. As a result, someone said with a loud voice from the throne in the very holy place, “The time for God to punish rebellious people is finished.” ¹⁸ When the angel emptied his bowl, lightning flashed, there were rumblings and thunder, and the earth shook. It shook more violently than it had ever shaken since people first lived on earth. ¹⁹ As a result, the very large city split into three parts. God also destroyed the cities in the other nations. God did not forget that the people of Babylon had sinned very much. So he made them drink a cup of the wine that made them suffer because he was angry with them.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air. Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne, saying, “It is done!” ¹⁸ There were flashes of lightning, rumbles, crashes of thunder, and a terrible earthquake—an earthquake greater than any that has ever happened since human beings have been on the earth, so great was this earthquake. ¹⁹ The great city was split into three parts, and the nations’ cities collapsed. Then God called to mind Babylon the great, and he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The seventh angel pours out the seventh bowl of God’s wrath.

poured out his bowl

The word “bowl” refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). AT: “poured out the wine from his bowl” or “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Then a loud voice came out of the temple and from the throne

This means someone sitting on the throne or someone standing near the throne spoke loudly. It is unclear who is speaking. (See: [Metonymy](#))

flashes of lightning

Use your language’s way of describing what lightning looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

rumbles, crashes of thunder

These are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

The great city was split

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The earthquake split the great city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Then God called to mind

"Then God remembered" or "Then God thought of" or "Then God started to pay attention to." This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten.

he gave that city the cup filled with the wine made from his furious wrath

The wine is a symbol of his wrath. Making people drink it is a symbol of punishing them. AT: "he made the people of that city drink the wine that represents his wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [temple](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 16:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Also as a result of the earthquake, every island disappeared, and the mountains became flat land. ²¹ Huge hailstones, each weighing thirty-three kilograms, fell from the sky onto the people. Then people blasphemed God because he had punished them in this terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large.

ULB:

²⁰ Every island disappeared, and the mountains were no longer found. ²¹ Great hailstones, weighing about a talent, came down from the sky upon the people. They cursed God for the plague of hail because that plague was so terrible.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

This is part of the seventh bowl of God's wrath.

the mountains were no longer found

The inability to see any mountains is metonymy expressing the idea that no mountains existed any longer. AT: "there were no longer any mountains" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a talent

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: "33 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

translationWords

- [hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prostitute

The Jews were often pictured as adulterous people and occasionally as prostitutes. This is not necessarily the reference here. The context may favor identifying the prostitute as Satan, but the translator should allow this illustration to be vague. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven hills

This is possibly a reference to the city of Rome, which was said to sit atop seven hills. However, the translator should not attempt to identify the seven hills in the translation.

=##### Important figures of speech in this chapter #####

=Metaphors = John uses many different metaphors in this chapter. He gives some explanation of their meaning, but allows them to remain relatively unclear. The translator should attempt to do the same. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up ”

This phrase is intended to contrast the statement that Jesus “was and is and is to come” used elsewhere in Scripture. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The use of paradox

A paradox is a seemingly absurd statement, which appears to contradict itself, but it is not absurd. This sentence in 17:11 is a paradox: “the beast ... is itself also an eighth king; but it is one of those seven kings.” The translator should not attempt to resolve this paradox, and it should remain a mystery. ([Revelation 17:11](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 17:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 17:1-2**UDB:**

¹ One of the seven angels, who had one of the seven bowls, came to me and said, "Come with me and I will show you how God will punish the prostitute, the woman who represents the city in which there are many canals of water. ² The kings of the earth have acted immorally and idolatrously with her. The people on the earth acted immorally in the same way. It was as if they had gotten drunk on wine that she gave them."

ULB:

¹ One of the seven angels who had been holding the seven bowls came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the condemnation of the great prostitute who is seated on many waters. ² It is with her that the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality. It is with the wine of her sexual immorality that the earth's inhabitants became drunk."

translationNotes**General Information:**

John begins to describe the part of his vision about the great prostitute.

the condemnation of the great prostitute

The noun "condemnation" can be expressed with the verb "condemn." AT: "how God will condemn the great prostitute" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the great prostitute

"the prostitute that everyone knows about." She represents a certain sinful city. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

on many waters

If you need to, you can use a more specific word for the kind of water. AT: "on many rivers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

It is with the wine of her sexual immorality that the earth's inhabitants became drunk

The wine represents sexual immorality. AT: "The people of the earth became drunk by drinking her wine, that is, they were sexually immoral" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))

her sexual immorality

This may well have a double meaning: sexual immorality among people and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)
- [drunk, drunkard](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:3-5

UDB:

³ Then God's Spirit took control of me, and the angel carried me away to a desolate area. There I saw a woman who was sitting on a red beast. The beast had written names all over itself. They were names that insulted God. The beast had seven heads and ten horns. ⁴ The woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had jewelry of gold, precious stones, and pearls; she held in her hand a golden cup. The cup was full of something to drink that stands for the detestable and filthy things that she does when she commits sexual immorality. ⁵ There was a name written on her forehead, a name with a secret meaning. It is "This woman is Babylon, the very evil city! She is the mother of all the prostitutes on the earth. She teaches them to do all the filthy, immoral things in the world."

ULB:

³ Then the angel carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was full of blasphemous names. The beast had seven heads and ten horns. ⁴ The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet and was adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. She was holding in her hand a golden cup full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality. ⁵ On her forehead was written a name having a secret meaning: "Babylon the great, the mother of prostitutes and of the detestable things of the earth."

translationNotes

carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness

The setting changes from John being in heaven to being in a wilderness. (See: [Background Information](#))

pearls

beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

On her forehead was written a name

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone had written on her forehead a name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Babylon the great

If it needs to be made clear that the name refers to the woman, it can be put in a sentence. AT: "I am Babylon, the powerful one" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)
- [detest, detested, detestable](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ I saw that the woman had become drunk because she had drunk the blood of God's people, those who had suffered for proclaiming the truth about Jesus. When I saw her, I was completely amazed.

⁷ The angel said to me, "Do not be amazed. I will explain to you the hidden meaning of the woman and of the beast on which she rides, the beast with the seven heads and the ten horns.

ULB:

⁶ I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of the believers and with the blood of the martyrs for Jesus. When I saw her, I was greatly astonished. ⁷ But the angel said to me, "Why are you astonished? I will explain to you the meaning of the woman and of the beast that is carrying her, the beast that has the seven heads and the ten horns.

translationNotes**General Information:**

The angel begins to explain to John the meaning of the prostitute and the red beast. The angel explains these things through verse 18.

was drunk with the blood ... and with the blood

"was drunk because she had drunk the blood ... and had drunk the blood"

the martyrs for Jesus

"the believers who have died because they told others about Jesus"

astonished

"amazed" or "surprised"

Why are you astonished?

The angel used this question to gently scold John. AT: "You should not be astonished!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- drunk, drunkard
- blood
-
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders
- angel, angels, archangel
- beast, beasts
- horn, horns, horned

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:8

UDB:

⁸ The beast that you saw lived previously. Eventually God will destroy him, but now he is not alive. He is about to come up from the shaft that went down but had no ending. When that beast appears again, the people on the earth will be amazed. They are people whose names have not been written in the Book of Life before God created the world.

ULB:

⁸ The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up from the bottomless pit. Then it will go on to destruction. Those who live on the earth, those whose names have not been written in the Book of Life since the foundation of the world—they will be astounded when they see the beast that existed, does not exist now, but is about to come.

translationNotes

the bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

Then it will go on to destruction

The noun “destruction” can be translated with a verb. AT: “Then he will be destroyed” or “Then God will destroy him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

it will go on to destruction

The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were going to it. (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

those whose names have not been written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “those whose names God did not write” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

since the foundation of the world

The angel speaks of God creating the world as if he laid the world’s foundation, like one would lay the foundation of a building. AT: “before God created the world” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [pit, pits, pitfall](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:9-10

UDB:

⁹ People need to think wisely to understand this: The seven heads of the beast on which the woman sits symbolize the seven hills of the city that the woman represents. They also symbolize seven rulers. ¹⁰ Five of those rulers have died. One is still alive. The seventh ruler has not yet come. When he comes, he must remain for only a short time.

ULB:

⁹ This calls for a mind that has wisdom. The seven heads are seven hills on which the woman is seated. ¹⁰ They are also seven kings. Five kings have fallen, one exists, and the other has not yet come; when he comes, he can remain only for a little while.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The angel continues speaking. Here he explains the meaning of the seven heads of the beast that the woman is riding.

This calls for a mind that has wisdom

The abstract nouns “mind” and “wisdom” can be expressed with “think” and “wise” or “wisely.” Why a wise mind is needed can be stated clearly. AT: “A wise mind is needed in order to understand this” or “You need to think wisely in order to understand this” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

This calls for

“This makes it necessary to have”

The seven heads are seven hills

Here “are” means “stand for” or “represent.”

Five kings have fallen

The angel speaks of dying as falling. AT: “Five kings have died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

one exists

“one is king now” or “one king is alive now”

the other has not yet come; when he comes

Not having existed yet is spoken of as not yet having come. AT: “the other has not yet become king; when he becomes king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he can remain only for a little while

The angel speaks of someone continuing to be king as if he were remaining in a place. AT: “he can be king only for a little while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:11

UDB:

¹¹ The beast that lived before and then was not alive will be the eighth ruler. He is actually one of those seven rulers, but God will certainly destroy him.

ULB:

¹¹ The beast that existed, but does not exist now, is itself also an eighth king; but it is one of those seven kings, and it is going to destruction.

translationNotes

it is one of those seven kings

Possible meanings are 1) the beast rules twice: first as one of the seven kings, and then as the eighth king or 2) the beast belongs to that group of seven kings because he is like them.

it is going to destruction

The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were going to it. AT: “it will certainly be destroyed” or “God will surely destroy it” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:12-14

UDB:

¹² The ten horns that you saw represent ten rulers who have not yet begun to rule. They will receive authority in order to rule people together with the beast, but they will rule for only a short time, as if it were for only one hour. ¹³ Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing. As a result they will give to the beast their right and authority to rule people. ¹⁴ The rulers and the beast will fight against the lamb. He will defeat them because he is the Lord who rules over all other lords and the King who rules over all other kings. The people who are with him are the ones whom God has chosen and called to himself, and who keep serving him faithfully.”

ULB:

¹² The ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they will receive authority as kings for one hour together with the beast. ¹³ These are of one mind, and they give over their power and authority to the beast. ¹⁴ They will wage war against the Lamb. But the Lamb will conquer them because he is Lord of lords and King of kings—and with him are the called ones, the chosen ones, and the faithful ones.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The angel continues speaking to John. Here he explains the meaning of the ten horns of the beast.

for one hour

If your language does not divide the day into 24 hours, you may need to use a more general expression. AT: “for a very short time” or “for a very small part of a day” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

These are of one mind

“These all think the same thing” or “These all agree to do the same thing”

the Lamb

A “lamb” is a young sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the called ones, the chosen ones, and the faithful ones

This refers to one group of people. The words “called” and “chosen” can be expressed in active form. AT: “the called, chosen, and faithful ones” or “the ones whom God has called and chosen, who are faithful to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- kingdom, kingdoms
- authority, authorities
- beast, beasts
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- power, powers
- lamb, Lamb of God
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- call, calls, calling, called
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then the angel said to me, "The waters that you saw in the city represent many different kinds of people, and many different groups of people, and different languages that the people speak, where the prostitute sits.

ULB:

¹⁵ The angel said to me, "The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages.

translationNotes**The waters you saw, where the prostitute is seated, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages**

Here "are" stands for "represent." (See: [Metaphor](#))

The waters

If you need to, you can use a more specific word for the kind of water. See how you translated "many waters" in [Revelation 17:1](#). AT: "The rivers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

multitudes

"large groups of people" or "great numbers of people"

languages

This refers to people who speak the languages. See how you translated this in [Revelation 10:11](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [nation, nations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The ten horns that you saw represent rulers. They and the beast will hate the prostitute. So they will take away everything that is in the city as if they were leaving it naked. They will destroy it as if devouring flesh, and they will burn it completely. ¹⁷ They will do that because God has caused them to decide to do what he wants them to do. As a result, they will let the beast have their power to rule until what God has said is fulfilled.

ULB:

¹⁶ The ten horns that you saw—they and the beast will hate the prostitute. They will make her desolate and naked, they will devour her flesh, and they will burn her completely with fire. ¹⁷ For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give their power to rule to the beast until God's words are fulfilled.

translationNotes**make her desolate and naked**

“steal everything that she has and leave her with nothing”

they will devour her flesh

Destroying her completely is spoken of as eating all her flesh. “They will destroy her completely” (See: [Metaphor](#))

For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give ... until God's words are fulfilled

They would agree to give their power to the beast, but it would not be that they want to obey God. AT: “For God has put it into their hearts to agree to give ... until God's words are fulfilled, and by doing this, they would carry out God's purpose”

God has put it into their hearts

The heart represents desires. Making them want to do something is spoken of as putting it in their hearts to do it. AT: “God has made them want” (See: [Metonymy](#))

power to rule

“authority” or “kingly authority”

until God's words are fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. AT: "until God fulfills what he said will happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)
- [desolate, desolation, desolations](#)
- [devour, devours, devoured, devouring](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [God](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [fulfill, fulfilled](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 17:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ The prostitute that you saw represents the very evil city whose leaders rule over the kings of the earth.”

ULB:

¹⁸ The woman you saw is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The angel finishes speaking to John about the prostitute and the beast.

is

Here “is” stands for “represents.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the great city that rules

When it says that the city rules, it means that the leader of the city rules. AT: “the great city whose leader rules” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 19 will continue the material contained in this chapter and both should be seen as a single unit.

Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 19:1-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecy

The angel gives a prophecy about the fall of Babylon. It is spoken of as having already happened even though it had not yet happened. This was common in prophecy and emphasizes the inevitability of the coming judgment. It is also prophesied that the people will lament over the fall of Babylon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

Metaphors are frequently used in prophecy. This chapter forms a slight break in the apocalyptic style of the book of Revelation overall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Revelation 18:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 18:1-3

UDB:

¹ After this I saw another angel, one who had great authority, coming down from heaven. The earth became bright because he was shining so intensely. ² He shouted with a very loud voice, "God is about to completely destroy the very evil city of Babylon. As a result, all kinds of evil spirits will live there, and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute ³ with whom all the people groups engaged with her in the passion of sexual immorality, which is like getting drunk on too much wine. Yes, and the kings of the earth have done the same things with her. The world's merchants became rich because she wanted to commit so much sexual immorality."

ULB:

¹ After these things I saw another angel coming down out of heaven. He had great authority, and the earth was illumined by his glory. ² He cried out with a mighty voice, saying,

"Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great!

She has become a dwelling place for demons,
a refuge for every unclean spirit,
and a refuge for every unclean and detestable bird.

³ For all the nations have drunk the wine of her immoral passion.

The kings of the earth have committed immorality with her.

The merchants of the earth have become rich from the power of her sensual way of living."

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Another angel comes down from heaven and speaks. This is a different angel than the one in the previous chapter, who spoke about the prostitute and the beast.

General Information:

The pronouns "she" and "her" refer to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. (See: [Personification](#))

Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great

The angel speaks of Babylon having been destroyed as if it had fallen. See how you translated this in [Revelation 14:8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

detestable bird

“disgusting bird” or “repulsive bird”

all the nations

The nations is a metonym for the people of those nations. AT: “the people of all the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

have drunk the wine of her immoral passion

This is a symbol for participating in her sexually immoral passion. AT: “have become sexually immoral like her” or “have become drunk like her in sexual sin” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

her immoral passion

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

merchants

A merchant is a person who sells things.

from the power of her sensual way of living

“because she spent so much money on sexual immorality”

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ I heard Jesus speak from heaven. He said, "My people, flee from that Babylon in order that you do not sin as those people do. If you sin as they do, I will punish you in those seven different ways, just as I will punish them. ⁵ It is as though their sins have been piled up to heaven and God remembers them, so now he will punish them."

⁶ To the angels whom God assigned to punish Babylon, Jesus said, "Pay back the people of that city to the same extent that they harmed other people. Cause them to suffer twice as much as they caused other people to suffer.

ULB:

⁴ Then I heard another voice from heaven say,
 "Come out from her, my people,
 so that you will not share in her sins,
 and so that you will not receive any of her plagues.

⁵ Her sins have piled up as high as heaven,
 and God has remembered her evil actions.

⁶ Pay her back as she has paid others back,
 and repay her double for what she has done;
 in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Another voice from heaven begins to speak.

General Information:

The pronouns "she" and "her" refer to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. (See: [Personification](#))

another voice

The word "voice" refers to the speaker, which is probably either Jesus or the Father. AT: "someone else" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Her sins have piled up as high as heaven

The voice speaks of Babylon's sins as if they were objects that could form a pile. AT: "Her sins are so many they are like a pile that reaches heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

remembered

"thought of" or "started to pay attention to." This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten. See how you translated "called to mind" in [Revelation 16:19](#).

Pay her back as she has paid others back

The voice speaks of punishment as if it were payment. AT: "Punish her as she has punished others" (See: [Metaphor](#))

repay her double

The voice speaks of punishment as if it were payment. AT: "punish her twice as much" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the cup she mixed, mix double the amount for her

The voice speaks of causing others to suffer as preparing strong wine for them to drink. AT: "prepare for her the wine of suffering that is twice as strong as what she made for others" or "make her suffer twice as much as she made others suffer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

mix double the amount

Possible meanings are 1) "prepare twice the amount" or 2) "make it twice as strong"

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)
- [God](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ To the same extent that Babylon, like a woman, has honored herself and done the things she wanted to do, to that extent torment her and cause her to grieve. Do that because in her mind she thought, ‘I rule as a queen! I am not a widow, and I will never mourn as widows do!’ ⁸ So in one day, terrible calamities will come upon her. The people in that city will die, others will mourn for them, people will be hungry because there will be no food, and the city will burn up. The Lord God is able to punish her because he is mighty.”

ULB:

⁷ As she glorified herself and lived in luxury,
give her just as much torture and grief.

For she says in her heart,

‘I am seated as a queen;

I am not a widow,

and I will never see mourning.’

⁸ Therefore in one day her plagues will come:

death, mourning, and famine.

She will be consumed by fire,

for the Lord God is mighty, and he is her judge.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The same voice from heaven continues speaking about Babylon as if it were a woman.

she glorified herself

“the people of Babylon glorified themselves”

For she says in her heart,

“Says in her heart” here is a synecdoche for her entire way of thinking. AT: “For she says to herself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I am seated as a queen

She claims to be a ruler, having her own authority. (See: [Simile](#))

I am not a widow

She implies that she will not be dependent on other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will never see mourning

Experiencing mourning is spoken of as seeing mourning. AT: "I will never mourn" (See: [Metaphor](#))

her plagues will come

Existing in the future is spoken of as a coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

She will be consumed by fire

Being burned up by fires is spoken of as being eaten up by fire. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Fire will completely burn her up" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [queen, queens](#)
- [mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)
- [famine, famines](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [judge, judges](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The kings on earth who have acted immorally with her and have done just what they wanted to do with her will weep and mourn for her when they see the smoke of the fire that will burn there. ¹⁰ They will stand far away from Babylon because they will be afraid that they will suffer just as she does. They will say, “How terrible it is for Babylon, that strong city! God is punishing her suddenly and swiftly!”

ULB:

⁹ The kings of the earth who committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her will weep and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning. ¹⁰ They will stand off at a distance, afraid of her torment, saying,

”Woe, woe to the great city,

Babylon, the powerful city!

For in a single hour your punishment has come.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John tells what people say about Babylon.

General Information:

In these verses the word “her” refers to the city of Babylon.

committed sexual immorality and went out of control with her

“sinned sexually and did whatever they wanted just as the people of Babylon did”

afraid of her torment

The abstract noun “torment” can be translated as a verb. AT: “afraid that they will be tormented as Babylon is” or “afraid that God will torment them as he torments Babylon” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Woe, woe

This is repeated for emphasis.

your punishment has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication
- fear, fears, afraid
- torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors
- woe
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians
- punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The merchants of the earth will weep and will mourn for her because no one in her will ever again buy the things that they have to sell. ¹²⁻¹³ They sell ornaments made of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls. They sell expensive cloth made of fine linen and silk, expensive cloth that is dyed purple and crimson. They sell all kinds of rare wood, all kinds of items made of ivory, costly wood, bronze, iron, and marble. They sell cinnamon, spice, perfume, frankincense, wine, olive oil, fine flour, and grain. They sell cattle, sheep, horses, and chariots. They even sell human beings as slaves.

ULB:

¹¹ The merchants of the earth weep and mourn for her, since no one buys her merchandise anymore— ¹² merchandise of gold, silver, precious stone, pearls, fine linen, purple, silk, scarlet, all kinds of scented wood, every vessel of ivory, every vessel made of most precious wood, bronze, iron, marble, ¹³ cinnamon, spice, incense, myrrh, frankincense, wine, oil, fine flour, wheat, cattle and sheep, horses and chariots, and slaves and human souls.

translationNotes**mourn for her**

“mourn for the people of Babylon”

precious stone, pearls

“many kinds of expensive stones.” See how you translated these in [Revelation 17:4](#).

fine linen

expensive cloth made from flax. See how you translated “linen” in [Revelation 15:6](#).

purple

“purple cloth”

silk

This is soft, strong cloth made from the fine string that silkworms make when they make their cocoons. AT: “expensive cloth” or “fine cloth” or “beautiful cloth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

scarlet

“red cloth”

every vessel of ivory

“all kinds of containers made of ivory”

ivory

a beautiful hard, white material that people get from the tusks or teeth of very large animals such as elephants or walruses. AT: “tusks” or “valuable animal teeth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

marble

a precious stone used for building (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

cinnamon

a spice that smells nice and comes from the bark of a certain kind of tree

spice

a substance used to add flavor to food or a good smell to oil

translationWords

- gold, golden
- silver
- bronze
- incense, incenses
- myrrh
- frankincense
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- wheat
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- chariot, chariots, charioteers
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- soul, souls

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ The good things you people longed to have are gone! All your luxurious and splendid possessions have vanished! They will be gone forever!

ULB:

¹⁴ The fruit that you longed for with all your might is gone from you. All your luxury and splendor have vanished, never to be found again.

translationNotes**The fruit**

“Fruit” here is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” AT: “The result” (See: [Metaphor](#))

longed for with all your might

“wanted very much”

vanished, never to be found again

Not to be found stands for not existing. This figure of speech can be stated in active form. AT: “vanished; you will never have them again” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ The merchants who sold these things and who had become rich will stand far away because they will be afraid that they will suffer just as the city has. They will weep and mourn, ¹⁶ and they will say, "Terrible things have happened to that great city! That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes made of fine linen cloth and expensive cloth dyed purple and crimson, and adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. ¹⁷ But suddenly and swiftly God has destroyed all these expensive things."

Every ship's captain, all people who travel by ship, all sailors, and all others who earn their living by traveling on the ocean will stand far away from the city."

ULB:

¹⁵ The merchants of these goods who became rich by her will stand away from her at a distance because of the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning loudly.

¹⁶ They will say,

"Woe, woe to the great city
that was dressed in fine linen,
in purple, and in scarlet,
and was adorned with gold,
precious jewels, and pearls!

¹⁷ In a single hour all that wealth has been wasted."

Every ship's captain, every seafaring man, sailors, and all whose living is made from the sea, stood off at a distance.

translationNotes**General Information:**

In these verses, the word "her" refers to the city of Babylon.

because of the fear of her torment

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "fear" and "torment." AT: "because they will be afraid of God tormenting them they way he torments her" or "because they will be afraid of suffering the way she is suffering" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

weeping and mourning loudly

This is what the merchants will be doing. AT: “and they will weep and mourn loudly”

the great city that was dressed in fine linen

Throughout this chapter, Babylon is spoken of as if it were a woman. The merchants speak of Babylon as being dressed in fine linen because its people were dressed in fine linen. AT: “the great city, which was like a woman dressed in fine linen” or “the great city, whose women were dressed in fine linen” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

that was dressed in fine linen

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that wore fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was adorned with gold

This can be stated in active form. AT: “adorned herself with gold” or “adorned themselves with gold” or “wore gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

precious jewels

“valuable gems” or “treasured gems”

pearls

beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [Revelation 17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

whose living is made from the sea

The phrase “from the sea” refers to what they do on the sea. AT: “who travel on the sea to make their living” or “who sail on the sea to different places in order to trade things” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [woe](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ When they see the smoke of the fire that is burning there, they will shout, “No other city has ever been like that great city!” ¹⁹ They will throw dust on their heads to show that they are sad, and they will shout, weep, and mourn. They will say, “Terrible things have happened to Babylon. That city made many people rich, the people who had ships that sail on the ocean in order to sell their expensive things. God has suddenly and swiftly destroyed that city!”

²⁰ Then someone spoke from heaven saying, “You who live in heaven, rejoice over what has happened to Babylon! You who are God’s people, including you apostles and prophets, rejoice. You must rejoice; God has justly punished the people there because they acted so terribly toward you!”

ULB:

¹⁸ They cried out as they saw the smoke of her burning. They said, “What city is like the great city?”

¹⁹ They threw dust on their heads, and cried out, weeping and mourning,

”Woe, woe to the great city

where all who had their ships

at sea became rich from her wealth.

For in a single hour she has been destroyed.”

²⁰ ”Rejoice over her, heaven,

you believers, apostles, and prophets,

for God has brought your judgment on her!”

translationNotes

General Information:

In these verses the word “they” refers to the sailors and seafarers, and the word “her” refers to the city of Babylon.

What city is like the great city?

This question shows the people the importance of the city of Babylon. AT: “No other city is like the great city, Babylon!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

God has brought your judgment on her

The noun “judgment” can be expressed with the verb “judge.” AT: “God has judged her for you” or “God has judged her because of the bad things she did to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully
- woe
- hour, hours
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
-
- apostle, apostles, apostleship
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Then a mighty angel picked up a boulder the size of a large stone for grinding grain, and he threw it into the ocean. Then he said, "You people in the great city of Babylon, God will throw down your city so that it will disappear just as that stone disappeared in the ocean! Your city will be gone forever! ²² In your city, there will never again be anyone playing harps, singing, playing flutes, or blowing trumpets. There will no longer be any skilled workers making things. There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills.

ULB:

²¹ A mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone and threw it into the sea, saying,

"In this way, Babylon, the great city,
will be thrown down with violence
and will not be seen anymore.

²² The sound made by harpists, musicians,
flute players, and trumpeters
will not be heard anymore in you.

No craftsman of any kind
will be found in you.

No sound of a mill
will be heard anymore in you.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Another angel begins to speak about Babylon. This is a different angel than the ones who have spoken previously.

millstone

a large round stone used to crush grain

Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will not be seen anymore

God will completely destroy the city. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God will violently throw down Babylon, the great city, and it will no longer exist" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

will not be seen anymore

“no one will see it anymore.” Not being seen here means that it will not exist. AT: “it will not exist anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The sound made by harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters will not be heard anymore in you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one in your city will ever again hear the sound that harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters make” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in you

The angel speaks as if Babylon were there listening to him. AT: “in Babylon” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

will not be heard anymore in you

“no one will hear them anymore in you.” Not being heard here means that they will not be there. AT: “they will not be in your city anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

No craftsman ... will be found in you

Not being found there means that they will not be there. AT: “No craftsman of any kind will be in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

No sound of a mill will be heard anymore in you

The sound of something not being heard means that no one will make that sound. AT: “No one will use a mill in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)
- [flute, flutes, pipe, pipes](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 18:23-24**UDB:**

²³ No lamp will ever again shine there. There will never again be the happy voices of any bridegroom and his bride. God will destroy your city because your merchants were the most important men in the world. You used witchcraft to deceive people of all groups of people. ²⁴ You are also responsible for killing the prophets and others of God's people. Indeed, you are guilty of every murder committed on the earth!"

ULB:

²³ The light of a lamp

will not shine in you anymore.

The voices of the bridegroom and the bride

will not be heard in you anymore,

for your merchants were the princes of the earth,

and the nations were deceived by your sorcery.

²⁴ In her the blood of prophets and believers was found,

and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth."

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The angel who threw the millstone finishes talking.

General Information:

The words "you," "your," and "her" refer to Babylon.

The voices of the bridegroom and the bride will not be heard in you anymore

This can be stated in active form. AT: "No one will ever again hear in Babylon the happy voices of a bridegroom and a bride" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will not be heard in you anymore

Not being heard here means that they will not be there. AT: "will not be in your city anymore" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your merchants were the princes of the earth

The angel speaks of important and powerful people as if they were princes. AT: “your merchants were like princes of the earth” or “your merchants were the most important men in the world” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the nations were deceived by your sorcery

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you deceived the people of the nations with your magic spells” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

In her the blood of prophets and believers was found, and the blood of all who have been killed on the earth

Blood being found there means that the people there were guilty of killing people. AT: “Babylon is guilty of killing the prophets and believers and all the other people in the world who were killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened](#)
- [lamp, lamps](#)
- [bridegroom, bridegrooms](#)
- [bride, brides, bridal](#)
- [prince, princes, princess, princesses](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft](#)
- [blood](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
-

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 19 continues the material contained in chapter 18 and both should be seen as a single unit. Some translations indent each line of poetry to make it easier to read. The ULB does this with the poetry in 19:1-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Songs

Heaven is often described as a place where people sing. These are songs of worship to God. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is continually worshiped. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Wedding celebration

The wedding celebration or feast is a very important image used in Scripture. In Jewish culture, paradise, or life with God after death, was often pictured as a feast. Here, Jesus pictures it as a wedding feast that a king prepares for his son, who has just gotten married. In addition, Jesus emphasizes that not all people whom God invites will properly prepare themselves to participate. These people will be thrown out from the feast.

Links:

- [Revelation 19:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 19:1-2**UDB:**

¹ After these things I heard what sounded like a huge crowd in heaven. They were shouting things like,

”Hallelujah! He has saved us!

He is glorious and mighty!

² Praise him because he judges truly and justly!

He has punished the very evil city that was like a prostitute because their people persuaded the other people of earth to act immorally as they did.

Praise him because he has punished them for murdering his servants!”

ULB:

¹ After these things I heard what sounded like a loud voice of a large number of people in heaven saying,

”Hallelujah.

Salvation, glory, and power belong to our God.

² His judgments are true and just,
for he has judged the great prostitute
who corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality.
He has taken revenge for the blood of his servants,
which she herself shed.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is the next part of John’s vision. Here he describes the rejoicing in heaven over the fall of the great prostitute, who is the city of Babylon.

I heard

Here “I” refers to John.

Hallelujah

This word means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.”

the great prostitute

Here John refers to the city of Babylon whose wicked people rule over all the people of the earth and lead them to worship false gods. He speaks of the wicked people of Babylon as if they were a great prostitute. (See: [Metaphor](#))

who corrupted the earth

Here “the earth” is a metonym for its inhabitants. AT: “who corrupted the people of the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the blood of his servants

Here “the blood” is a metonym that represents murder. AT: “murdering his servants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

she herself

This refers to Babylon. The reflexive pronoun “herself” is used to add emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [God](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)
- [corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [blood](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:3-4**UDB:**

³ The crowd shouted a second time, saying,

“Hallelujah! The smoke of the fire that is burning that city will rise forever!”

⁴ The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures prostrated themselves and worshiped God, who sits on the throne. They said:

“It is true! Hallelujah!”

ULB:

³ They spoke a second time:

”Hallelujah!

The smoke rises from her forever and ever.”

⁴ The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures prostrated themselves and worshiped God who was seated on the throne. They were saying,

“Amen. Hallelujah!”

translationNotes**They spoke**

Here “They” refers to the crowd of people in heaven.

Hallelujah

This word means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:1](#).

smoke rises from her

The word “her” refers to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. The smoke is from the fire that destroys the city. AT: “smoke rises from that city”

twenty-four elders

“24 elders.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the four living creatures

“the four living beings” or “the four living things.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:6](#)

who was seated on the throne

This can be stated in active form. AT: “who sat on the throne” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- elder, elders
- creature, creatures
- prostrate, prostrated
- worship
- throne, thrones, enthroned
- amen, truly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:5**UDB:**

⁵ Someone spoke from the throne and said,

”All you who are his servants, praise our God!

All you who honor him, whether you are important or not, everyone praise him!”

ULB:

⁵ Then a voice came out from the throne, saying,

”Praise our God,

all you his servants,

you who fear him,

both the unimportant and the powerful.”

translationNotes**a voice came out from the throne**

Here John speaks of the “voice” as if it were a person. AT: “someone spoke from the throne” (See: [Personification](#))

Praise our God

Here “our” refers to the speaker and all God’s servants. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))

you who fear him

Here “fear” does not mean to be afraid of God, but to honor him. AT: “all you who honor him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

both the unimportant and the powerful

The speaker uses these words together to mean all of God’s people. (See: [Merism](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)

- God
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- fear, fears, afraid
- power, powers

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:6**UDB:**

⁶ Then I heard something like the noise of a huge crowd of people, like the sound of a huge waterfall, and like the sound of loud claps of thunder. They were shouting:

”Hallelujah! Our Lord God, who rules over everything, reigns!

ULB:

⁶ Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like loud crashes of thunder, saying,

”Hallelujah!

For the Lord reigns, the God who rules over all.

translationNotes

Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great number of people, like the roar of many waters, and like loud crashes of thunder

John speaks of what he is hearing as if it were like the sound made by a very large crowd of people, a large body of rushing water, and very loud thunder. (See: [Simile](#))

Hallelujah

This word means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:1](#).

For the Lord

“Because the Lord”

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ We should rejoice, we should be extremely glad, and we should honor him because it is now time for the Lamb to be united with the woman he is marrying. She has made herself ready.

⁸ God has permitted her to dress herself in fine linen, bright and clean.”
Fine, bright, and clean linen represents the righteous actions of God’s people.

ULB:

⁷ Let us rejoice and be very happy
and give him the glory
because the wedding celebration of the Lamb has come,
and his bride has made herself ready.

⁸ She was permitted to be dressed
in bright and clean fine linen”
(for fine linen is the righteous acts of holy people).

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

The voice of the crowd from the previous verse continues speaking.

Let us rejoice

Here “us” refers to all of God’s servants.

give him the glory

“give God the glory” or “honor God”

wedding celebration of the Lamb ... his bride has made herself ready

Here John speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people together forever as if it were a wedding celebration. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

has come

Existing in the present is spoken of as having come. (See: [Metaphor](#))

his bride has made herself ready

John speaks of God's people as if they were a bride who has gotten ready for her wedding. (See: [Metaphor](#))

She was permitted to be dressed in bright and clean fine linen

Here "she" refers to the people of God. John speaks of the righteous acts of God's people as if they were a bright and clean dress that a bride wears on her wedding day. You can state this in active form. AT: "God allowed her to wear a dress of bright and clean fine linen" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- lamb, Lamb of God
- bride, brides, bridal
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- people of God, my people

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then the angel said to me, “Write this: how fortunate are the people whom God invites to the feast when the Lamb marries his wife!” He also said to me: “These words that God declares are true!” ¹⁰ I immediately prostrated myself at his feet in order to worship him. But he said to me, “Do not worship me! I am just your fellow servant and the fellow servant of your fellow believers, those who speak the truth about Jesus. God is the one you should worship because it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus!”

ULB:

⁹ The angel said to me, “Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding feast of the Lamb.” He also said to me, “These are true words of God.” ¹⁰ I prostrated myself before his feet to worship him, but he said to me, “Do not do this! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers who hold the testimony about Jesus. Worship God, for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.”

translationNotes

General Information:

An angel begins to speak to John. This is likely the same angel who began to speak to John in [Revelation 17:1](#).

those who are invited

You can state this in active form. AT: “the people whom God invites” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the wedding feast of the Lamb

Here the angel speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people forever as if it were a wedding feast. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I prostrated myself

To prostrate oneself is to lie on the ground, face down, to show respect and willingness to serve. See note in [Revelation 19:3](#).

your brothers

The word “brothers” here refers to all believers, male and female.

who hold the testimony about Jesus

Here holding stands for believing in or announcing. AT: “who speak the truth about Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the testimony about Jesus is the spirit of prophecy

Here “spirit of prophecy” refers to God’s Holy Spirit. AT: “for it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [worship](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Then I saw the heavens open up, and I was surprised to see a white horse. Jesus, the one who was riding on the horse, is called “Trustworthy and Genuine.” He judges all people according to what is right; he fights in justice against his enemies. ¹² His eyes shone like a flame of fire. There were many royal crowns on his head. A name had been written on him. Only he knows the meaning of that name. ¹³ The cloak he was wearing was drenched with blood. His name is also “The Message of God.”

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw heaven open, and I looked and there was a white horse. The one riding it is called faithful and true. It is with justice that he judges and wages war. ¹² His eyes are like a fiery flame, and on his head are many crowns. He has a name written on him that no one knows but himself. ¹³ He wears a robe that was dipped in blood, and his name is called the Word of God.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new vision. John begins to describe a rider on a white horse.

Then I saw heaven open

This imagery is used to signify the beginning of a new vision. See how you translated this idea in [Revelation 4:1](#) and [Revelation 11:19](#) and [Revelation 15:5](#).

The one riding it

The rider is Jesus.

It is with justice that he judges and wages war

Here “justice” refers to what is right. AT: “He judges all people and wages war according to what is right” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

His eyes are like a fiery flame

John speaks of the rider’s eyes as if they shone like a flame of fire. (See: [Simile](#))

He has a name written on him

You can state this in active form. AT: “Someone has written a name on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on him that no one knows but himself

“on him, and only he knows the meaning of that name” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

He wears a robe that was dipped in blood

You can state this in an active form. AT: “Blood had covered his robe” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his name is called the Word of God

You can state this in active form. “Word of God” here is a metonym for Jesus Christ. AT: “his name is called the Message of God” or “his name is also the Word of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification](#)
- [judge, judges](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [written](#)
- [robe, robes, robed](#)
- [blood](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The armies of heaven were following him. They were riding on white horses. They were wearing clothes made of clean white linen. ¹⁵ A sharp sword extends from his mouth; with it he will strike the rebellious people groups. He himself will rule them powerfully as though he had an iron rod. He will crush his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress. He will do this for God, who rules over everything and who is furiously angry with them because of their sins. ¹⁶ On his cloak over his thigh a name had been written: “King who rules over all other kings and Lord who rules over all other lords.”

ULB:

¹⁴ The armies of heaven were following him on white horses, dressed in fine linen, white and clean. ¹⁵ Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword with which he strikes down the nations, and he will rule them with an iron rod. He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty. ¹⁶ He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh: “King of kings and Lord of lords.”

translationNotes

Out of his mouth goes a sharp sword

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:16](#).

strikes down the nations

“destroys the nations” or “brings the nations under his control”

rule them with an iron rod

John speaks of the rider’s power as if he were ruling with an iron rod. See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:5](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

He tramples in the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty

John speaks of the rider’s destroying his enemies as if they were grapes that a person tramples in a winepress. Here “wrath” refers to God’s punishment of evil persons. AT: “He crushes his enemies according to the judgment of God Almighty, just as a person crushes grapes in a winepress” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He has a name written on his robe and on his thigh:

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone has written a name on his robe and thigh.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [rod, rods](#)
- [winepress](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [robe, robes, robed](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun. He called loudly to all the flesh-eating birds flying high in the sky, "Come and gather for the large feast that God is providing for you! ¹⁸ Come and eat the flesh of all God's enemies who are dead—the flesh of kings, of army commanders, of people who fought powerfully, of horses and of the soldiers who rode them, and the flesh of all other kinds of people, whether they were free or slave, important or not. All kinds!"

ULB:

¹⁷ I saw an angel standing in the sun. He called out in a loud voice to all the birds flying overhead, "Come, gather together for the great feast of God. ¹⁸ Come eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of commanders, the flesh of mighty men, the flesh of horses and their riders, and the flesh of all men, both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful."

translationNotes

I saw an angel standing in the sun

Here "the sun" is a metonym for the light of the sun. AT: "Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun" (See: [Metonymy](#))

both free and slave, the unimportant and the powerful

The angel uses these two sets of opposite-meaning words together to mean all people. (See: [Merism](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [voice, voices](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Then I saw the beast and the kings of earth with their armies; they had gathered together to fight against the rider on the horse and his army. ²⁰ The rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet. The false prophet is the one who had performed miracles in the beast's presence. By doing that he had deceived the people who had accepted the beast's mark on their foreheads and who had worshiped its image. Then God threw the beast and the false prophet alive into the lake of fire that burns with sulfur.

ULB:

¹⁹ I saw the beast and the kings of the earth with their armies. They were gathering in order to wage war with the one who rode the horse and with his army. ²⁰ The beast was captured and with him the false prophet who performed the signs in his presence. With these signs he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast and who worshiped his image. The two of them were thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur.

translationNotes

The beast was captured and with him the false prophet

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the mark of the beast

This was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in [Revelation 13:17](#).

The two of them were thrown alive

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God threw the beast and the false prophet alive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the fiery lake of burning sulfur

"the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur"

translationWords

- [beast, beasts](#)

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- false prophet, false prophets
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- worship
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- hell, lake of fire

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 19:21**UDB:**

²¹ The rider on the horse killed the rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth. All the birds gorged themselves on the flesh of the people and horses that he had killed.

ULB:

²¹ The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse. All the birds ate their dead flesh.

translationNotes**The rest of them were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one who rode on the horse**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The rider of the horse killed the remainder of the beast’s armies with the sword that extended from his mouth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the sword that came out of the mouth

The sword blade was sticking out of his mouth. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:16](#).

translationWords

- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [flesh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 19 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 19 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is about a period of time often referred to as the “millennial kingdom” because it is a kingdom of a thousand years. This chapter is very significant for understanding the events of the last days and the book of Revelation. (See: [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The thousand-year reign of Christ

Jesus is said to reign for a thousand years. and all the prophecies in Scripture about worldwide peace will be fulfilled. Scholars are divided over whether this is an actual period of time or if it is an allegory for Christ beginning to reign in people’s hearts. It is best to translate this as if Christ is physically reigning on earth for a thousand years and not attempt to input potential symbolism into the text. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Final rebellion

This chapter describes the period of time after Jesus’ reign known as the final rebellion. During this time, Satan and many people will attempt to rebel against Jesus. This will result in God’s ultimate and final victory over sin and evil before eternity begins. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

Great white throne

This is an important judgment in heaven after the final rebellion. During this judgment, people who have faith in God are separated from those who reject him. (See: [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [skies](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [faith](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of life

The is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this book of life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Hades and the lake of fire

These appear to be two distinct places. The translator may wish to do further research to determine how to differentiate these two places, but they should not be equated with each other in translation. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Links:

- **Revelation 20:01 Notes**

Revelation 20:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven. He had the key to the deep, dark pit, and he was carrying a large chain in his hand. ² He seized the dragon. That dragon is the ancient serpent, the devil, that is, Satan. The angel bound him with the chain. That chain could not be loosed for one thousand years. ³ The angel threw him into the deep, dark pit. He shut the door of the pit, locked it, and sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it. He did that in order that Satan might no longer deceive all the many groups of people, until those one thousand years are ended. After that time, Satan must go free for a short time in order that he can do what God has planned.

ULB:

¹ Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven. He had the key to the bottomless pit, and he had a great chain in his hand. ² He took hold of the dragon, the old serpent, which is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. ³ He threw him into the bottomless pit. He shut it and sealed it over him. This was so that he would not deceive the nations anymore until the thousand years were over. After that, he must be set free for a short amount of time.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of an angel throwing the devil into the bottomless pit.

Then I saw

Here “I” refers to John.

bottomless pit

This is an extremely deep narrow hole. Possible meanings are 1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever or 2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

dragon

This was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

sealed it over him

The angel sealed the pit to keep anyone from opening it. AT: “sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

deceive the nations

Here “nations” is a metonym for the people of the earth. AT: “deceive the people-groups” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the thousand years

“1,000 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

he must be set free

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will command the angel to free him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [pit, pits, pitfall](#)
- [serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [nation, nations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:4**UDB:**

⁴ I saw thrones on which people were sitting. God gave them authority to judge. I also saw the souls of other people whose heads had been cut off because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and had declared God's message. They were people who had refused to worship the beast or its image, and who had not allowed the beast's servants to put the beast's mark on them, either on their foreheads or on their hands. They became alive again, and they ruled with Christ during those one thousand years.

ULB:

⁴ Then I saw thrones. Seated on them were those who had been given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast or his image, and they had refused to receive the mark on their forehead or hand. They came to life, and they reigned with Christ for a thousand years.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing thrones and the souls of believers.

who had been given authority to judge

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom God had given authority to judge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who had been beheaded

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whose heads others had cut off" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God

"because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and about the word of God"

for the word of God

These words are a metonym for the message from God. AT: "for what they taught about the scriptures" (See: [Metonymy](#))

They came to life

“They came back to life” or “They became alive again”

translationWords

- throne, thrones, enthroned
- authority, authorities
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- soul, souls
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- worship
- beast, beasts
- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- reign, reigns, reigned, reigning
- Christ, Messiah

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:5-6

UDB:

⁵ They were the ones who lived again the first time that God caused dead people to live again. The rest of the believers who had died did not live again until after those one thousand years. ⁶ God will be pleased with those who live again this first time. God will consider them holy. They will not die a second time. Instead, they will be priests who serve God and Christ, and they will rule with Christ during those one thousand years.

ULB:

⁵ The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended. This is the first resurrection. ⁶ Blessed and holy is anyone who takes part in the first resurrection! Over these the second death has no power. They will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with him for a thousand years.

translationNotes

The rest of the dead

“All of the other dead people”

the thousand years were ended

“the end of the 1,000 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Over these the second death has no power

Here John describes “death” as a person with power. AT: “These people will not experience the second death” (See: [Personification](#))

the second death

“dying a second time.” This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:08](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). AT: “the final death in the lake of fire” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- power, powers
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Christ, Messiah
- reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When the one thousand years are ended, God will release Satan from his prison. ⁸ Satan will go out to deceive the rebellious people groups all over the earth. These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog. Satan will gather them to fight against God's people. There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them, just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore.

ULB:

⁷ When the thousand years come to an end, Satan will be released from his prison. ⁸ He will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to bring them together for the battle. They will be as many as the sand of the sea.

translationNotes

Satan will be released from his prison

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will release Satan from his prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

at the four corners of the earth

This is an idiom that means “all over the earth.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Gog and Magog

These are the names that the prophet Ezekiel used to represent faraway countries. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

They will be as many as the sand of the sea

This emphasizes the extremely large number of soldiers in Satan's army. (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- Satan, devil, evil one
- prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

- [nation, nations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ They will march over the whole earth and will surround the camp of God's people in Jerusalem, the city that God loves. Then God will send fire down from heaven, and it will burn them up. ¹⁰ God will throw the devil, who had deceived those people, into the lake of burning sulfur. This is also where God had thrown the beast and the false prophet. As a result, they will continually suffer severely forever.

ULB:

⁹ They went up over the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the believers, the beloved city. But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. ¹⁰ The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

translationNotes**They went**

“Satan’s army went”

the beloved city

This refers to Jerusalem.

fire came down from heaven and devoured them

Here John speaks of fire as if it were alive. AT: “God sent fire from heaven to burn them up” (See: [Personification](#))

The devil, who deceived them, was thrown into

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God threw the devil, who had deceived them, into” or “God’s angel threw the devil, who had deceived them, into” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

lake of burning sulfur

“the lake of fire that burns with sulfur” or “place full of fire that burns with sulfur.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:20](#).

where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown

This can be stated in active form. AT: “where he had also thrown the beast and the false prophet”
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

They will be tormented

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will torment them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

-
- [beloved](#)
- [fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [devour, devours, devoured, devouring](#)
- [Satan, devil, evil one](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [hell, lake of fire](#)
- [sulfur, sulfurous](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [false prophet, false prophets](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then I saw a huge white throne on which God was sitting. He was so fearsome that the earth and the sky disappeared from his presence completely; they were no more. ¹² I saw that the people who had died but now lived again were standing in front of the throne. They were both important and unimportant people! The books in which God records what people do were opened. Another book was also opened, which is the Book of Life in which God has written the names of people who have eternal life. God judged the people who had died and now lived again according to what they had done, just as he had recorded it in the books.

ULB:

¹¹ Then I saw a great white throne and the one who is seated on it. The earth and the heaven fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go. ¹² I saw the dead—the mighty and the unimportant—standing before the throne, and the books were opened. Then another book was opened—the Book of Life. The dead were judged by what was recorded in the books, according to their deeds.

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing a great white throne and the dead being judged.

The earth and the heaven fled away from his presence, but there was no place for them to go

John describes heaven and earth as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth. (See: [Personification](#))

the mighty and the unimportant

John combines these opposite-meaning words to mean all of the dead people. (See: [Merism](#))

the books were opened

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone opened the books" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The dead were judged

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God judged the people who had died and now lived again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by what was recorded

This can be stated in active form. AT: “by what he had recorded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 20:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The people whose bodies were buried in the sea became alive again in order to stand before God's throne. Everyone who had been buried on the land became alive again also in order to stand before the throne. God judged each one of them according to what each one had done. ¹⁴ All the unbelievers—those who had been in the place where they waited after they died—were thrown into the burning lake. The burning lake is the place in which people die the second time. ¹⁵ God also threw the people whose names were not in the book, the book where God has written the names of the people who have eternal life, into the lake of fire.

ULB:

¹³ The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them, and the dead were judged according to what they had done. ¹⁴ Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death—the lake of fire. ¹⁵ If anyone's name was not found written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

translationNotes

The sea gave up the dead ... Death and Hades gave up the dead

Here John speaks of the sea, death, and Hades as if they were living persons. (See: [Personification](#))

the dead were judged

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God judged the dead people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Death and Hades were thrown

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God threw Death and Hades" or "God's angel threw Death and Hades" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Hades

Here "Hades" is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the second death

"dying a second time." This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:08](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). AT: "the final death in the lake of fire" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

If anyone's name was not found written

This can be stated in active form. AT: "If God's angel did not find a person's name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he was thrown into the lake of fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the angel threw him into the lake of fire" or "the angel threw him into the place where fire burns forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [hell, lake of fire](#)
- [written](#)
- [Book of Life](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter gives a detailed description of the new Jerusalem.

Special concepts in this chapter

Second death

Death is a type of separation. The first death is a physical death, the separation of the soul from the body. The second death is the eternal separation from God. (See: [die](#), [dies](#), [died](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [deadness](#), [death](#), [deaths](#), [deathly](#), [soul](#), [souls](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this book of life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

New heaven and new earth

It is unclear whether this is an entirely new heaven and earth or if it is remade out of the present heaven and earth. The same is also true of the new Jerusalem. It is possible this will affect translation in some languages.

Links:

- [Revelation 21:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 21:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth. The first heaven and the first earth had disappeared, and the oceans no longer existed. ² I saw God's holy city, which is the new city of Jerusalem. It was coming down out of heaven from God. God had prepared it and decorated it, just as women decorate a bride in order to marry a man.

ULB:

¹ Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. ² I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, that came down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband.

translationNotes

General Information:

John begins to describe his vision of the new Jerusalem.

I saw

Here "I" refers to John.

like a bride adorned for her husband

This compares the new Jerusalem to a bride who has made herself beautiful for her bridegroom. (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- holy city, holy cities
- Jerusalem
- God
- bride, brides, bridal

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:3-4**UDB:**

³ Then I heard a loud voice calling out from the throne of God saying, "Listen to this! Now God will live with people. He will live right in the midst of them! They will be his people. God himself will be with them, and he will be their God. ⁴ He will cause them to no longer be sad. He will stop them from weeping ever again. None of them will ever again die or mourn or cry or suffer pain because God has taken away those things and they are gone forever."

ULB:

³ I heard a great voice from the throne saying, "Look! The dwelling place of God is with human beings, and he will live with them. They will be his people, and God himself will be with them and he will be their God. ⁴ He will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and there will be no more death, or grieving, or crying, or pain. The former things have passed away.

translationNotes**a great voice from the throne saying**

The word "voice" refers to the one who speaks. AT: "someone speak loudly from the throne saying" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Look!

The word "Look" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

The dwelling place of God is with human beings, and he will live with them

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God will, indeed, live among men. (See: [Parallelism](#))

He will wipe away every tear from their eyes

Tears here represent sadness. See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:17](#). AT: "God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [voice, voices](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then God, who sits on the throne, said, “Listen to this! I am now making everything new!” He said to me: “Write these things that I have told you because you can trust that I will certainly cause them to happen.” ⁶ He also said to me, “I have completed all these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. To everyone who wants it, I will freely give water from the spring that causes people to live forever.

ULB:

⁵ The one who was seated on the throne said, “Look! I make all things new.” He said, “Write this down because these words are trustworthy and true.” ⁶ He said to me, “These things are done! I am the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end. To the one who thirsts I will give drink without cost from the spring of the water of life.

translationNotes

these words are trustworthy and true

Here “words” refers to the message that they formed. AT: “this message is trustworthy and true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize God’s eternal nature. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#))

the alpha and the omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) “the one who began all things and who ends all things” or 2) “the one who has always lived and who always will live.” If these are unclear to readers, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:8](#). AT: “the A and the Z” or “the first and the last” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))

the beginning and the end

Possible meanings are 1) “the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end” or 2) “the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things.”

To the one who thirsts ... water of life

God speaks of a person's desire for eternal life as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:7-8

UDB:

⁷ I will give this to all who are victorious over Satan. I will be their God, and they will be my children.
⁸ But those who are cowardly, those who do not believe in me, those who do detestable things, those who murder people, those who sin sexually, those who do witchcraft, those who worship idols, and every liar will all suffer in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur. That is what it means to die a second time.”

ULB:

⁷ The one who conquers will inherit these things, and I will be his God, and he will be my son. ⁸ But as for the cowards, the faithless, the detestable, the murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. That is the second death.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The one seated on the throne continues to speak to John.

the cowards

“those who are too afraid to do what is right”

the detestable

“those who do terrible things”

the fiery lake of burning sulfur

“the lake of fire that burns with sulfur” or “place full of fire that burns with sulfur.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:20](#).

the second death

“dying a second time.” This is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:08](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). AT: “the final death in the lake of fire” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- son, sons
- faithless, faithlessness
- sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication
- sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- hell, lake of fire
- sulfur, sulfurous
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls of wine—the wine that caused the seven last ways of suffering—came and said to me, “Come with me and I will show you the people who have permanently united with the Lamb as a woman marries a man!”

¹⁰ Then God’s Spirit took control of me, and the angel took me to the top of a very high mountain. He showed me God’s holy city, the new Jerusalem, which was coming down out of heaven from God.

ULB:

⁹ One of the seven angels came to me, the one who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues, and he said, “Come here. I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb.” ¹⁰ Then he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain and showed me the holy city Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God.

translationNotes**the bride, the wife of the Lamb**

The angel speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a woman who is about to marry her groom, the Lamb. Jerusalem is metonymy for those who believers who will inhabit it. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

carried me away in the Spirit

The setting changes as John is taken to a high mountain where he can see the city of Jerusalem. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 17:3](#). (See: [Background Information](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)
- [bride, brides, bridal](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

- [holy city, holy cities](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ It was shining with the brilliant light that came from God himself. The city was shining as a very precious jasper stone shines, and it was clear like crystal. ¹² Around the city was a very high wall. The wall had twelve gates. An angel was at each gate. The names of the twelve tribes of Israel were written over the gates. Each gate had the name of one tribe. ¹³ Three gates were on the east side, three gates were on the north side, three gates were on the south side, and three gates were on the west side.

ULB:

¹¹ Jerusalem had the glory of God, and its brilliance was like a very precious jewel, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper. ¹² It had a great, high wall with twelve gates, with twelve angels at the gates. On the gates were written the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel. ¹³ On the east were three gates, on the north three gates, on the south three gates, and on the west three gates.

translationNotes

Jerusalem

This refers to the “Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven” that he described in the previous verse and not to the physical Jerusalem.

like a very precious jewel, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the brilliance of Jerusalem by naming a specific jewel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

crystal-clear

“extremely clear”

jasper

This is a valuable stone. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

twelve gates

“12 gates” (See: [Numbers](#))

were written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone had written” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- angel, angels, archangel
- name, names, named
- twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes
- children, child
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The city wall had twelve foundation stones. On each foundation stone was the name of one of the twelve apostles whom the Lamb had appointed.

¹⁵ The angel who was speaking to me carried a golden measuring rod, a rod that he used to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.

ULB:

¹⁴ The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ¹⁵ The one who spoke with me had a measuring rod made of gold to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.

translationNotes**Lamb**

This refers to Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#).

translationWords

- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)
- [apostle, apostles, apostleship](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [rod, rods](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ The city was square in shape; it was as long as it was wide. After the angel measured the city with his rod, he reported that it was 2,200 kilometers long, and that its width and height were each the same as its length. ¹⁷ He measured its wall and reported that it was sixty-six meters thick. The angel used the measure that people normally use.

ULB:

¹⁶ The city was laid out in a square; its length was the same as its width. He measured the city with the measuring rod, twelve thousand stadia in length (its length, width, and height were the same). ¹⁷ He also measured its wall, 144 cubits thick by human measurement (which is also the angel's measure).

translationNotes

twelve thousand stadia

“12,000 stadia.” You may convert this to modern measures. AT: “2,200 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

144 cubits

“one hundred forty-four cubits.” You may convert this to modern measures. AT: “66 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [rod, rods](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ The city wall was made of something like the green stone that we call jasper. The city itself was made of pure gold that looked like clear glass. ¹⁹ The foundations of the wall of the city were beautifully made with precious stones. The first foundation stone was jasper, the second foundation stone was sapphire, the third foundation stone was chalcedony, the fourth foundation stone was emerald, ²⁰ the fifth foundation stone was sardonyx, the sixth foundation stone was sardius, the seventh foundation stone was chrysolite, the eighth foundation stone was beryl, the ninth foundation stone was topaz, the tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase, the eleventh foundation stone was jacinth, and the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst.

ULB:

¹⁸ The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold, like clear glass. ¹⁹ The foundations of the wall were adorned with every kind of precious stone. The first was jasper, the second was sapphire, the third was agate, the fourth was emerald, ²⁰ the fifth was onyx, the sixth was carnelian, the seventh was chrysolite, the eighth was beryl, the ninth was topaz, the tenth was chrysoprase, the eleventh was jacinth, and the twelfth was amethyst.

translationNotes

The wall was built of jasper and the city of pure gold

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone had built the wall with jasper and the city with pure gold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

pure gold, like clear glass

The gold was so clear that it is spoken of as if it were glass. (See: [Simile](#))

The foundations of the wall were adorned

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone adorned the foundations of the wall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

jasper ... emerald ... carnelian

These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red. Emeralds are green. See how you translated these in [Revelation 4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

sapphire ... agate ... onyx ... chrysolite ... beryl ... topaz ... chrysoprase ... jacinth ... amethyst

These are all precious gems. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The twelve gates of the city were something like huge pearls. Each gate was like a single pearl. The city streets appeared to be pure gold that looked like clear glass.

²² There was no temple in the city. The Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb are there, so there was no need for a temple.

ULB:

²¹ The twelve gates were twelve pearls; each of the gates was made from a single pearl. The streets of the city were pure gold, like transparent glass. ²² I saw no temple in the city, for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple.

translationNotes

pearls

beautiful and valuable white beads. They are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [Revelation 17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

each of the gates was made from a single pearl

This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone had made each of the gates from a single pearl” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

pure gold, like transparent glass

The gold was so clear that it is spoken of as if it was glass. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 21:18](#). (See: [Simile](#))

Lord God ... and the Lamb are its temple

The temple represented God’s presence. This means the new Jerusalem does not need a temple because God and the Lamb will live there. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

- [temple](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:23-25**UDB:**

²³ The city will not need the sun or the moon to light the city because the light coming from God will light the city, and the Lamb will also be its light. ²⁴ The people groups will live with the light of the city shining on them. The kings of the earth will bring their wealth into the city to honor God and the lamb. ²⁵ The gates of the city will not be shut at the end of the day as they usually are shut because there will be no night there.

ULB:

²³ The city had no need of the sun or the moon in order to shine on it because the glory of God shone on it, and its lamp is the Lamb. ²⁴ The nations will walk by the light of that city. The kings of the earth will bring their splendor into it. ^[1] ²⁵ Its gates will not be shut during the day, and there will be no night there.

21:24 ^[1] Some older copies read, *The nations that are saved will walk by the light of that city.*

translationNotes**its lamp is the Lamb**

Here the glory of Jesus, the Lamb, is spoken of as if it were a lamp that gives light to the city. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The nations will walk

“Walk” here is an idiom for “live.” AT: “The people from all the different nations will live” (See: [Idiom](#))

Its gates will not be shut

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one will shut the gates” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)
- [lamp, lamps](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [nation, nations](#)

- [light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 21:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ The people of the world will also bring their wealth into the city. ²⁷ Nothing that is morally impure, no one who does deeds that God considers detestable, and no one who tells lies will ever enter that city. Only those people whose names are written in the book that belongs to the lamb, the book that has the names of people who have eternal life, will be there.

ULB:

²⁶ They will bring the splendor and the honor of the nations into it, ²⁷ but nothing unclean will ever enter into it, nor anyone who does what is shameful or deceitful, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life.

translationNotes

They will bring

“The kings of the earth will bring”

nothing unclean will ever enter into it, nor anyone

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “only what is clean will ever enter, and never anyone” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life

This can be stated in active form. AT: “but only those whose names the Lamb wrote in his Book of Life” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

translationWords

- splendor
- honor, honors
- nation, nations
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

- deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive
- lamb, Lamb of God
- Book of Life

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 21 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter emphasizes that the prophecies of the book of Revelation are going to take place soon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Tree of life

There is probably an intended connection between the tree of life in the Garden of Eden and the tree of life mentioned here. The curse that began in Eden will end at this time.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Alpha and omega

These are the names of the first and last letters in the Greek alphabet. The ULB spells out their names in English. This strategy can serve as a model for other translators. Some translators, however, may decide to use the first and last letters in their own alphabet, for example, “A and Z” in English.

Links:

- [Revelation 22:01 Notes](#)

Revelation 22:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the angel showed me the river that causes people who drink from it to live forever. The water was sparkling and clear like crystal. The river was flowing out from the throne where God and the Lamb were sitting. ² It flowed down through the middle of the main street of the city. On each side of the river were trees with fruit that causes people who eat it to live forever. The trees bear twelve kinds of fruit; they produce one crop each month. The people groups use the leaves of the trees as medicine in order that their wounds may heal.

ULB:

¹ Then the angel showed me the river of the water of life, clear as crystal. It was flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb ² through the middle of the city's street. On each side of the river was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruits, and it bears its fruit every month. The leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

John continues to describe the new Jerusalem as the angel shows it to him.

showed me

Here "me" refers to John.

the river of the water of life

"the river flowing with life-giving water"

the water of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving water. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Lamb

This is a young sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the nations

Here “nations” refers to the people who live in every nation. AT: “the people of all nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [God](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [nation, nations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:3-5**UDB:**

³ There will never be anyone or anything there that God will curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city. God's servants will worship him there. ⁴ They will see him face to face, and his name will be written on their foreheads. ⁵ There will never again be night. God's servants will not need the light of a lamp or the light of the sun because the Lord God will shine his light upon them. They will rule forever.

ULB:

³ There will no longer be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will serve him. ⁴ They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. ⁵ There will be no more night; they will have no need for the light of a lamp or sunlight because the Lord God will shine on them. They will reign forever and ever.

translationNotes**There will no longer be any curse**

Possible meanings are 1) "There will never be anyone there that God will curse" or 2) "There will not be anyone there who is under God's curse"

his servants will serve him

Possible meanings of "his" and "him" are 1) both words refer to God the Father, or 2) both words refer to both God and the Lamb, who rule together as one.

They will see his face,

This is an idiom, meaning to be in God's presence. AT: "They will be in God's presence." (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)
- [lamp, lamps](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)

- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:6-7

UDB:

⁶ The angel said to me: “These things that God has shown you are true, and he will certainly make them happen. The Lord God who inspires the prophets sent his angel to show the people who serve him the events that must happen soon.” ⁷ Jesus says to all his people, “Listen to this! I am coming soon; God will abundantly bless everyone who obeys the message that has been written in this book.”

ULB:

⁶ The angel said to me, “These words are trustworthy and true. The Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, sent his angel to show his servants what must happen soon.” ⁷ “Look! I am coming soon! Blessed is the one who obeys the words of the prophecy of this book.”

translationNotes

General Information:

This is the beginning of the end of John’s vision. In verse 6 the angel is speaking to John. In verse 7, Jesus is speaking. This can be shown clearly as is in the UDB. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

These words are trustworthy and true

Here “words” refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:5](#). AT: “This message is trustworthy and true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the God of the spirits of the prophets

Possible meanings are 1) the word “spirits” refers to the inward disposition of the prophets and indicates that God inspires them. AT: “God who inspires the prophets” or 2) the word “spirits” refers to the Holy Spirit who inspires the prophets. AT: “God who gives his Spirit to the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Look!

Here Jesus begins to speak. The word “Look” adds emphasis to what follows.

I am coming soon!

It is understood that he is coming in order to judge. See how you translated this in [Revelation 3:11](#). AT: “I am coming to judge soon!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- word, words
- true, truth, truths
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- bless, blessed, blessing
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:8-9

UDB:

⁸ I, John, am the one who heard and saw in a vision these things that I have written down. When I had heard and seen them, I immediately lay down in front of the angel who had shown me these things in order to worship him. ⁹ But he said to me, “Do not worship me! I am just a servant of God like you! I am also a servant like your fellow believers who are the prophets, and like those who obey the message in this book. Instead, worship God!”

ULB:

⁸ I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. When I heard and saw them, I prostrated myself before the feet of the angel to worship him, the angel who showed me these things. ⁹ He said to me, “Do not do that! I am a fellow servant with you, with your brothers the prophets, and with those who obey the words of this book. Worship God!”

translationNotes

General Information:

John tells his readers about how he responded to the angel.

I prostrated myself

This means that John lay on the ground and stretch himself out in reverence or submission. This action was an important part of worship, to show respect and willingness to serve.

translationWords

- John (the apostle)
- angel, angels, archangel
- worship
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- brother, brothers
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- word, words

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ He also said to me, "Do not keep secret the message about what God has foretold in this book because it is almost time for him to fulfill this message. ¹¹ Since that time is near, if those who act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way, let them continue to do so. God will soon pay them back for that. If those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so. God will soon pay them back for that. Those who are acting righteously should continue to act righteously. Those who are perfect should continue to be perfect."

ULB:

¹⁰ He said to me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near. ¹¹ The one who is unrighteous, let him continue to do unrighteousness. The one who is morally filthy, let him continue to be morally filthy. The one who is righteous, let him continue to do what is righteous. The one who is holy, let him continue to be holy."

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

The angel finishes speaking to John.

Do not seal up ... this book

To seal a book was to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible for anyone to read what was inside without breaking the seal. The angel is telling John not to keep the message a secret. AT: "Do not keep secret ... this book" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the words of the prophecy of this book

Here "words" refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 22:7](#). AT: "This prophetic message of this book" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed
- word, words
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:12-13

UDB:

¹² Jesus says to all people: "Listen! I am coming soon! And I will pay back and punish or reward everyone according to what each one has done. ¹³ I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things.

ULB:

¹² "Look! I am coming soon. My reward is with me, to pay back each one according to what he has done. ¹³ I am the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.

translationNotes

General Information:

As the book of Revelation is ending, Jesus gives a closing greeting. (See: [End of Story](#))

the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end

These three phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that Jesus has and will exist for all time. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Merism](#))

the alpha and the omega

These are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and who ends all things" or 2) "the one who has always lived and who always will live." If unclear to readers you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:8](#). AT: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))

the first and the last

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:17](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the beginning and the end

Possible meanings are 1) "the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end" or 2) "the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things." See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#).

translationWords

- [reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ God is very pleased with the people who wash their robes and make them clean because they will be able to eat the fruit of the tree that enables people to live forever and because they will be able to enter the gates into the holy city. ¹⁵ Outside are people who are unholy. They include people who practice witchcraft, people who sin sexually, people who murder others, idol worshipers, and all people who enjoy telling lies and are continual liars. They can never enter that city.”

ULB:

¹⁴ Blessed are those who wash their robes so that they will have the right to eat from the tree of life and to enter the city through the gates. ^[1] ¹⁵ Outside are the dogs, the sorcerers, the sexually immoral, the murderers, the idolaters, and everyone who loves and practices falsehood.

22:14 ^[1] Instead of, *Blessed are those who wash their robes*, some older copies read, *Blessed are those who do his commandments*.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues giving his closing greeting.

those who wash their robes

Becoming righteous is spoken of as if it were washing one’s clothing. See how you translated as similar phrase in [Revelation 7:14](#). AT: “those who have become righteous, as if they have washed their robes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Outside

This means they are outside the city and not allowed to enter.

are the dogs

In that culture the dog was an unclean, despised animal. Here the word “dogs” is derogatory and refers to people who are wicked. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [robe, robes, robed](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft](#)
- [sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:16

UDB:

¹⁶ “I, Jesus, sent my angel in order that he might say to you people who are the groups of believers that all these things are true. I am the descendant of King David whom the prophets promised would come. I am the one who is like the bright morning star.”

ULB:

¹⁶ I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify to you about these things for the churches. I am the root and the descendant of David, the bright morning star.”

translationNotes

to testify to you

Here the word “you” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the root and the descendant of David

The words “root” and “descendant” mean basically the same thing. Jesus speaks of being a “descendant” as if he were a “root” that grew out of David. Together the words emphasize that Jesus belongs to the family of David. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

the bright morning star

Jesus speaks of himself as if he were the bright star that sometimes appears early in the morning and indicates that a new day is about to begin. See how you translated “morning star” in [Revelation 2:28](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- angel, angels, archangel
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- church, churches, Church
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- David

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:17**UDB:**

¹⁷ God's Spirit and his people, who are like the bride of Christ, say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" Whoever hears this should also say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" The people who want to come should come! Everyone who desires the water that enables people to live forever should take it as a free gift!

ULB:

¹⁷ The Spirit and the Bride say, "Come!" Let the one who hears say, "Come!" Whoever is thirsty, let him come, and whoever desires it, let him freely have the water of life.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

This verse is a response to what Jesus said.

the Bride

Believers are spoken of as if they were a bride about to be married to her groom, Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Come!

Possible meanings are 1) that this is an invitation for people to come and drink the water of life. AT: "Come and drink!" or 2) that this is a polite request for Jesus to return. AT: "Please come!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Whoever is thirsty ... the water of life

A person's desire for eternal life is spoken of as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving water. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the water of life

Eternal life is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving water. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- bride, brides, bridal
- free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty
- water, waters, watered, watering
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ I, John, solemnly warn everyone who hears the message about what I have foretold in this book: If anyone adds anything to this message, God will punish him in the ways that this book tells about. ¹⁹ If anyone takes away any of the message about what I have foretold in this book, God will take away that person's right to eat fruit from the tree that enables people to live forever. He will also take away that person's right to enter God's city. Both these things are described in this book.

ULB:

¹⁸ I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to them, God will add to him the plagues that are written about in this book. ¹⁹ If anyone takes away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city that are written about in this book. ^[1]

22:19 ^[1]Some older copies read, *God will take away his share in the Book of Life and in the holy city that are written about in this book.*

translationNotes

General Information:

John gives his final remarks about the book of Revelation.

I testify

Here "I" refers to John.

the words of the prophecy of this book

Here "words" refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 22:7](#). AT: "This prophetic message of this book" (See: [Metonymy](#))

If anyone adds to them ... If anyone takes away

This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.

that are written about in this book

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which I have written about in this book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- word, words
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- plague, plagues
- holy city, holy cities

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

Revelation 22:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Jesus, who says that all these things are true, says, “Certainly I am coming soon!” I, John, reply, “May it be so! Lord Jesus, come!”

²¹ I pray that our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to all of you who are God’s people. Amen!

ULB:

²⁰ The one who testifies to these things says, “Yes! I am coming soon.” Amen! Come, Lord Jesus!

²¹ May the grace of the Lord Jesus be with everyone. Amen.

translationNotes**General Information:**

In these verses John gives his and Jesus’ closing greetings.

The one who testifies

“Jesus, who testifies”

everyone

“every one of you”

translationWords

- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- amen, truly
- lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- grace, gracious

Links:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 22 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22 translationQuestions](#)

translationQuestions

Revelation 1

From whom did this revelation first come, and to whom is the revelation being shown?

The revelation of Jesus Christ came from God, and is being shown to his servants. [1:1]

When would the events of the revelation take place?

The events of the revelation would take place soon. [1:1]

Who will be blessed by this book?

Those who read aloud, hear, and obey this book will be blessed. [1:3]

Who wrote this book, and to whom did he write?

John wrote this book, and he wrote to the seven churches in Asia. [1:4]

What three titles does John give to Jesus Christ?

John gives Jesus Christ the titles of faithful witness, firstborn of the dead, and ruler of the kings of the earth. [1:5]

What has Jesus made the believers?

Jesus has made the believers a kingdom and priests to God the Father. [1:6]

Who will see Jesus when he comes?

Every eye will see Jesus when he comes, including those who pierced him. [1:7]

How does the Lord God describe himself?

The Lord God describes himself as the Alpha and the Omega, the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty. [1:8]

Why was John on the island of Patmos?

John was on the island of Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony about Jesus. [1:9]

What did the loud voice behind John tell him to do?

The loud voice told John to write in a book what he saw and send it to the seven churches. [1:11]

What kind of hair and eyes did the man have who John saw?

The man John saw had hair as white as wool, and eyes like a fiery flame. [1:14]

What was in the right hand of the man, and what was coming out of his mouth?

The man had seven stars in his right hand, and a sharp two-edged sword coming out of his mouth. [1:16]

What did John do when he saw the man?

John fell at the man's feet like a dead man. [1:17]

What keys did the man say he had?

The man said he had the keys of Death and of Hades. [1:18]

What was the meaning of the seven stars and the seven golden lampstands?

The seven stars were the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands were the seven churches. [1:20]

Revelation 2

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Ephesus. [2:1]

What has the church in Ephesus done regarding those who are evil and regarding the false prophets?

The church in Ephesus has not put up with those who are evil and has tested the false prophets. [2:2]

What does Christ have against the church in Ephesus?

Christ has against the church in Ephesus that they have left behind their first love. [2:4]

What does Christ say he will do if they do not repent?

Christ says he will come and remove their lampstand from its place if they do not repent. [2:5]

What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

Christ promises that those who conquer will eat from the tree of life in the paradise of God. [2:7]

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Smyrna. [2:8]

What has the church in Smyrna experienced?

The church in Smyrna has experienced sufferings, poverty, and slander. [2:9]

What does Christ promise to those who are faithful until death and who conquer?

Christ promises that those who are faithful until death and conquer will receive the crown of life and will not be hurt by the second death. [2:10]

What does Christ promise to those who are faithful until death and who conquer?

Christ promises that those who are faithful until death and conquer will receive the crown of life and will not be hurt by the second death. [2:11]

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Pergamum. [2:12]

Where does the church in Pergamum live?

The church in Pergamum lives where Satan's throne is. [2:13]

What did the church in Pergamum do in the days when Antipas was killed?

The church in Pergamum held tightly to Christ's name and did not deny the faith in the days when Antipas was killed. [2:13]

To what two teachings have some in the church in Pergamum held?

Some in the church in Pergamum have held to the teachings of Balaam and to the teachings of the Nicolaitans. [2:14]

To what two teachings have some in the church in Pergamum held?

Some in the church in Pergamum have held to the teachings of Balaam and to the teachings of the Nicolaitans. [2:15]

What does Christ warn he will do if those who hold to these false teachings do not repent?

Christ warns he will come and make war against those who hold to these false teachings. [2:16]

What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

Christ promises that those who conquer will eat the hidden manna and will receive a white stone with a new name. [2:17]

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Thyatira. [2:18]

What good things does Christ know the church in Thyatira has done?

Christ knows the church in Thyatira has shown love, faith, service, and patient endurance. [2:19]

What does Christ have against the church in Thyatira?

Christ has against the church in Thyatira that they tolerate the immoral false prophetess Jezebel. [2:20]

What does Christ warn he will do if Jezebel does not repent?

Christ warns that he will throw Jezebel into a sickbed and strike her children dead if she does not repent. [2:22]

What does Christ warn he will do if Jezebel does not repent?

Christ warns that he will throw Jezebel into a sickbed and strike her children dead if she does not repent. [2:23]

What does Christ tell those who have not held to the teaching of Jezebel to do?

Christ tells them to hold on tightly until he comes. [2:25]

What does Christ promise those who conquer?

Christ promises those who conquer authority over the nations and the morning star. [2:26]

What does Christ promise those who conquer?

Christ promises those who conquer authority over the nations and the morning star. [2:28]

To what does Christ say the reader of this book should listen?

Christ says the reader should listen to what the Spirit is saying to the churches. [2:29]

Revelation 3

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Sardis. [3:1]

What is the reputation of the church in Sardis, but what is the truth about them?

The reputation of the church in Sardis is that they are alive, but the truth is that they are dead. [3:1]

What does Christ warn the church in Sardis to do?

Christ warns them to wake up and strengthen what remains. [3:2]

What does Christ promise those who conquer?

Those who conquer will be clothed in white, will remain in the book of life, and will have their name spoken before God the Father. [3:5]

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Philadelphia. [3:7]

What has the church in Philadelphia done even though they have little strength?

The church in Philadelphia has obeyed Christ's word and has not denied his name. [3:8]

What will Christ make those of the synagogue of Satan do?

Christ will make those of the synagogue of Satan bow down before the saints' feet. [3:9]

What does Christ tell the church of Philadelphia to do since he is coming soon?

Christ tells them to hold tight to what they have so no one can take away their crown. [3:11]

What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

Those who conquer will be a pillar in the temple of God, will have the name of God, the name of the city of God, and Christ's new name written on them. [3:12]

To which angel is the next portion of the book written?

The next portion of the book is written to the angel of the church in Laodicea. [3:14]

What does Christ wish the church in Laodicea was?

Christ wishes the church in Laodicea was either cold or hot. [3:15]

What is Christ about to do to the church in Laodicea, and why?

Christ is about to vomit the church in Laodicea out of his mouth because they are lukewarm. [3:16]

What does the church in Laodicea say about itself?

The church in Laodicea says that it is rich and in need of nothing. [3:17]

What does Christ say about the church in Laodicea?

Christ says the church in Laodicea is miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked. [3:17]

What does Christ do for everyone he loves?

Christ trains and teaches everyone he loves. [3:19]

What does Christ promise to those who conquer?

Those who conquer will sit with Christ on his throne. [3:21]

To whom does Christ say the reader of the book should listen?

Christ says the reader should listen to what the Spirit says to the churches. [3:22]

Revelation 4

What did John see opened?

John saw a door opened in heaven. [4:1]

What did the voice say he would show John?

The voice said he would show John what must happen after these things. [4:1]

What was someone sitting on in heaven?

Someone was sitting on a throne in heaven. [4:2]

What was around the throne in heaven?

Around the throne were twenty-four thrones with twenty-four elders seated on them. [4:4]

What were the seven lamps burning in front of the throne?

The seven lamps were the seven Spirits of God. [4:5]

What four things were around the throne?

Four living creatures were around the throne. [4:6]

What three words do the four living creatures repeat night and day?

Night and day the four living creatures do not stop saying, "Holy, holy, holy." [4:8]

What do the twenty-four elders do when the living creatures give glory to God?

The twenty-four elders prostrate themselves before the throne and bow down, throwing down their crowns. [4:10]

What do the elders say about God's role in creation?

The elders say God created all things and by his will all things existed and were created. [4:11]

Revelation 5

What did John see in the right hand of the one seated on the throne?

John saw a scroll sealed with seven seals. [5:1]

Who on the earth was worthy to open the scroll or read it?

No one was worthy to open the scroll or read it. [5:3]

Who on the earth was worthy to open the scroll or read it?

No one was worthy to open the scroll or read it. [5:4]

Who was able to open the scroll and its seven seals?

The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, was able to open the scroll. [5:5]

Who was standing among the elders before the throne?

A Lamb, looking as though he had been killed, was standing among the elders before the throne. [5:6]

What were the seven horns and seven eyes on the Lamb?

The seven horns and seven eyes were the seven Spirits of God sent out over all the earth. [5:6]

What were the gold bowls full of incense which the elders had?

The gold bowls full of incense were the prayers of the saints. [5:8]

Why was the Lamb worthy to open the scroll?

The Lamb was worthy because he purchased for God people from every tribe, language, people, and nation with his blood. [5:9]

Where will the priests of God reign?

The priests of God will reign on the earth. [5:10]

What did the angels say the Lamb was worthy to receive?

The angels said the Lamb was worthy to receive power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and praise. [5:12]

Who said that the one on the throne and the Lamb should be praised forever and ever?

Every created thing said that the one on the throne and the Lamb should be praised forever and ever. [5:13]

What did the elders do when they heard the four living creatures say, "Amen!"?

The elders laid down on the ground and worshiped. [5:14]

Revelation 6**What did the Lamb do with the scroll?**

The Lamb opened one of the seven seals on the scroll. [6:1]

What did John see after the first seal was opened?

John saw a white horse, with a rider going out to conquer. [6:2]

What did John see after the second seal was opened?

John saw a fiery red horse, whose rider took peace away from the earth. [6:4]

What did John see after the third seal was opened?

John saw a black horse, whose rider held a pair of scales in his hand. [6:5]

What did John see after the fourth seal was opened?

John saw a pale horse, whose rider was named Death. [6:8]

What did John see after the fifth seal was opened?

John saw the souls of those who had been killed because of the word of God. [6:9]

What did the souls under the altar want to know from God?

The souls wanted to know how long until God avenged their blood. [6:10]

How long were the souls told they would have to wait?

The souls were told they would have to wait until the full number of fellow servants were killed. [6:11]

What did John see after the sixth seal was opened?

John saw an earthquake, the sun becoming black, the moon becoming like blood, and the stars falling to the earth. [6:12]

What did John see after the sixth seal was opened?

John saw an earthquake, the sun becoming black, the moon becoming like blood, and the stars falling to the earth. [6:13]

What did John see the kings, generals, rich, powerful, and everyone else doing?

John saw them hiding in caves and asking the rocks to fall on them and hide them. [6:15]

What did John see the kings, generals, rich, powerful, and everyone else doing?

John saw them hiding in caves and asking the rocks to fall on them and hide them. [6:16]

From what did the kings, generals, rich, powerful, and everyone else want to be hid?

They wanted to be hid from the one seated on the throne and from the anger of the Lamb. [6:16]

What day had come?

The great day of the wrath of the one on the throne and the Lamb had come. [6:17]

Revelation 7

What were the four angels standing on the four corners of the earth doing when John saw them?

The four angels were holding back the four winds of the earth. [7:1]

What did the angel from the east say must be done before the earth was harmed?

The angel said that a seal must be put on the foreheads of the servants of God before the earth was harmed. [7:2]

What did the angel from the east say must be done before the earth was harmed?

The angel said that a seal must be put on the foreheads of the servants of God before the earth was harmed. [7:3]

How many people from what tribe were sealed?

The number of people sealed was 144,000 from every tribe of the people of Israel. [7:4]

What did John then see before the throne of God and in front of the Lamb?

John saw a great multitude from every nation, tribe, people, and language before the throne. [7:9]

According to those before the throne, to whom does salvation belong?

Those before the throne called out that salvation belongs to God and to the Lamb. [7:10]

In what bodily position were the angels, elders, and living creatures as they worshiped God?

They laid down on the ground and put their faces on the ground as they worshiped God. [7:11]

Who did the elder say were the ones clothed in white robes before the throne?

The elder said they were the ones who had come out of the Great Tribulation. [7:14]

How had the ones before the throne made their robes white?

They had made their robes white by washing them in the blood of the Lamb. [7:14]

What did the elder say God would do for those who are clothed in white robes?

God will spread his tent over them so they will suffer no more. [7:15]

What did the elder say God would do for those who are clothed in white robes?

God will spread his tent over them so they will suffer no more. [7:16]

What did the elder say the Lamb would do for those who are clothed in white robes?

The Lamb will shepherd them and guide them to springs of living water. [7:17]

Revelation 8

What caused there to be silence in heaven?

When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven. [8:1]

What was given to the seven angels who stand before God?

Seven trumpets were given to the seven angels who stand before God. [8:2]

What rose up before God?

The smoke of incense with the prayers of the saints rose up before God. [8:4]

What happened when the angel threw down to earth the fire from the altar?

When the angel threw down the fire, there was thunder, rumblings, lightning, and an earthquake. [8:5]

What happened when the first trumpet was blown?

When the first trumpet was blown, a third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees, and all grass. [8:7]

What happened when the second trumpet was blown?

When the second trumpet was blown, a third of the sea became blood, a third of the creatures of the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed. [8:8]

What happened when the second trumpet was blown?

When the second trumpet was blown, a third of the sea became blood, a third of the creatures of the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed. [8:9]

What happened when the third trumpet was blown?

When the third trumpet was blown, a third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died. [8:10]

What happened when the third trumpet was blown?

When the third trumpet was blown, a third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died. [8:11]

What happened when the fourth trumpet was blown?

When the fourth trumpet was blown, a third of the day and a third of the night had no light. [8:12]

Why did the eagle say “Woe, woe, woe” to those on the earth?

The eagle said, “Woe, woe, woe” to those on the earth because of the remaining three trumpet blasts. [8:13]

Revelation 9**What kind of star did John see when the fifth trumpet was blown?**

When the fifth trumpet was blown, John saw a star from heaven that had fallen to earth. [9:1]

What did the star do?

The star opened the shaft of the deep and endless pit. [9:2]

What were the locusts from the pit told to do?

The locusts were told not to damage the earth, but only the people who did not have the seal of God. [9:3]

What were the locusts from the pit told to do?

The locusts were told not to damage the earth, but only the people who did not have the seal of God. [9:4]

What would the people tortured by the locusts seek but not find?

The people tortured by the locusts would seek death, but would not find it. [9:6]

What sound did the wings of the locusts make?

The sound of the locusts' wings was like the sound made by many chariots and horses running into battle. [9:9]

Who was the king over the locusts?

The king over the locusts was Abaddon, or in Greek, Apollyon, the angel of the pit. [9:11]

What was past after the fifth trumpet was blown?

The first woe was past after the fifth trumpet was blown. [9:12]

What voice did John hear when the sixth trumpet was blown?

When the sixth trumpet was blown, John heard a voice coming from the golden altar that is present before God. [9:13]

What did the four angels do when they heard the voice?

When they heard the voice, the four angels were released to kill a third of humanity. [9:15]

How many soldiers on horseback did John see?

John saw 200,000,000 soldiers on horseback. [9:16]

What plagues killed a third of the people?

The plagues of fire, smoke, and sulfur from the mouths of the horses killed a third of the people. [9:18]

How did the people not killed by the plagues respond?

The people not killed by the plagues did not repent of their works, nor did they stop worshiping demons. [9:20]

Revelation 10

What did the face and feet of the mighty angel that John saw look like?

The angel had a face like the sun and feet like pillars of fire. [10:1]

Where did the angel stand?

The angel stood with his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land. [10:2]

What was John told not to write?

John was told not to write what the seven thunders said. [10:4]

By whom did the mighty angel swear?

The mighty angel swore by him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven, the earth, and the sea. [10:6]

What did the mighty angel say would no longer be delayed?

The angel said that when the seventh trumpet was blown, there would be no more delay, but the mystery of God would be accomplished. [10:7]

What was John told to take from the mighty angel?

John was told to take an open scroll from the angel. [10:8]

What did the angel say would happen when John ate the scroll?

The angel said that the scroll would be sweet in John's mouth, but bitter in his stomach. [10:9]

After he ate the scroll, about what was John told to prophesy?

John was told to prophesy about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings. [10:11]

Revelation 11

What was John told to measure?

John was told to measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it. [11:1]

How long would the Gentiles trample the holy city?

The Gentiles would trample the holy city for forty-two months. [11:2]

What were the two witnesses given authority to do to those who choose to harm them?

The two witnesses were given authority to kill their enemies with fire. [11:5]

Where will the bodies of the two witnesses lie?

Their bodies will lie in the street of the city symbolically called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was crucified. [11:8]

How will the people of the earth react when the two witnesses are killed?

The people of the earth will rejoice and celebrate when the two witnesses are killed. [11:10]

What will happen to the two witnesses after three and a half days?

After three and a half days, the two witnesses will stand on their feet and go up to heaven. [11:11]

What will happen to the two witnesses after three and a half days?

After three and a half days, the two witnesses will stand on their feet and go up to heaven. [11:12]

After the two witnesses and the earthquake are finished, what is past?

After the two witnesses and the earthquake, the second woe is past. [11:14]

When the seventh trumpet was blown, what was spoken in heaven?

When the seventh trumpet was blown, it was spoken that the kingdom of the world had become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ. [11:15]

What did the elders say that the Lord God had now begun to do?

The elders said that the Lord God had now begun to reign. [11:17]

According to the elders, what time had now come?

The time had now come for the dead to be judged, for God's servants to be rewarded, and for God to destroy those who were destroying the earth. [11:18]

What was then opened in heaven?

God's temple was then opened in heaven. [11:19]

Revelation 12

What great sign was seen in heaven?

In heaven was seen a pregnant woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet, and with twelve stars on her head crying out in birth pains. [12:1]

What great sign was seen in heaven?

In heaven was seen a pregnant woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet, and with twelve stars on her head crying out in birth pains. [12:2]

What other great sign was seen in heaven?

In heaven was seen a huge red dragon with seven heads and ten horns, with seven crowns on his heads. [12:3]

What did the dragon do with his tail?

The dragon swept away a third of the stars in heaven and hurled them down to earth. [12:4]

What did the dragon desire to do?

The dragon desired to devour the child of the woman. [12:4]

What was the male child going to do?

The male child was going to rule all the nations with an iron rod. [12:5]

Where did the male child go?

The male child was snatched away to God and to his throne. [12:5]

Where did the woman go?

The woman fled into the wilderness. [12:6]

Who fought in heaven?

Michael and his angels fought against the dragon and his angels. [12:7]

What happened to the dragon and his angels after the battle?

The dragon and his angels were thrown down to the earth. [12:9]

Who is the dragon?

The dragon is the old serpent, the devil, or Satan. [12:9]

How did the brothers conquer the dragon?

The brothers conquered the dragon by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony. [12:11]

How much time does the dragon know he has?

The dragon knows he has only a little time. [12:12]

What was done for the woman when the dragon pursued her?

The woman was given wings to fly to the place prepared for her where she would be taken care of. [12:13]

What was done for the woman when the dragon pursued her?

The woman was given wings to fly to the place prepared for her where she would be taken care of. [12:14]

When the dragon could not sweep away the woman, what did the dragon do?

The dragon went off to make war with those who obey God's commandments and who hold to the testimony about Jesus. [12:15]

When the dragon could not sweep away the woman, what did the dragon do?

The dragon went off to make war with those who obey God's commandments and who hold to the testimony about Jesus. [12:16]

When the dragon could not sweep away the woman, what did the dragon do?

The dragon went off to make war with those who obey God's commandments and who hold to the testimony about Jesus. [12:17]

Revelation 13

From where did the beast come that John saw?

The beast came up out of the sea. [13:1]

What did the dragon give to the beast?

The dragon gave to the beast his power, a throne, and authority to rule. [13:2]

Why did the whole earth marvel and follow the beast?

The whole earth marveled and followed the beast because he had a lethal wound that had been healed. [13:3]

What did the beast speak with his mouth?

The beast spoke proud words and insults against God, his name, the place where he lived, and those who live in heaven. [13:5]

What did the beast speak with his mouth?

The beast spoke proud words and insults against God, his name, the place where he lived, and those who live in heaven. [13:6]

What was the beast permitted to do with the holy people?

The beast was permitted to make war with the holy people and to conquer them. [13:7]

Who will not worship the beast?

Those whose name is written in the book of life will not worship the beast. [13:8]

To what are those who are holy called?

Those who are holy are called to patient endurance and faith. [13:10]

From where did the other beast come that John saw?

The other beast came up out of the earth. [13:11]

What kind of horns and speaking did the other beast have?

The other beast had horns like a lamb and spoke like a dragon. [13:11]

What did the other beast cause those who live on the earth to do?

The other beast caused those who live on the earth to worship the first beast. [13:12]

What happened to those who refused to worship the beast?

Those who refused to worship the beast were killed. [13:15]

What did everyone receive from the other beast?

Everyone received a mark on the right hand or on the forehead. [13:16]

What is the number of the beast?

The number of the beast is 666. [13:18]

Revelation 14

Who did John see standing before him?

John saw the Lamb standing before him on Mount Zion. [14:1]

Who was able to learn the new song being sung before the throne?

Only the 144,000 who had been redeemed from the earth were able to learn the new song. [14:3]

Who was redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb?

The 144,000 who were blameless were redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb. [14:4]

Who was redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb?

The 144,000 who were blameless were redeemed as firstfruits to God and to the Lamb. [14:5]

To whom did the angel give the eternal message of good news?

The angel gave the eternal message of good news to every nation, tribe, language, and people on the earth. [14:6]

What did the angel tell those who live on the earth to do?

The angel told them to fear God and to give him glory. [14:7]

What time did the angel say had come?

The angel said the hour of God's judgment had come. [14:7]

What did the second angel announce?

The second angel announced that Babylon the great had fallen. [14:8]

What did the third angel say would happen to those who received the mark of the beast?

Those who received the mark of the beast would be tormented with fire and sulfur. [14:10]

To what were the saints called?

The saints were called to patient endurance. [14:12]

Who did John see seated on the cloud?

John saw one like a Son of Man seated on the cloud. [14:14]

What did the one sitting on the cloud do?

The one sitting on the cloud swung his sickle to harvest the earth. [14:16]

What did the angel with the sickle do?

The angel with the sickle gathered the grape harvest of the earth and threw it into the wine vat of God's wrath. [14:19]

What happened at the winepress of God?

The winepress was stomped and blood poured out from it. [14:20]

Revelation 15

What did the seven angels that John saw have with them?

The seven angels had seven plagues, which are the final plagues. [15:1]

Who was standing by the sea?

Those who had been victorious over the beast and his image were standing by the sea. [15:2]

Whose song were those standing by the sea singing?

Those standing by the sea were singing the song of Moses and the song of the Lamb. [15:3]

How were God's ways described in the song?

God's ways were described as just and true. [15:3]

In the song, who will come and worship God?

All nations will come and worship God. [15:4]

What then came out of the most holy place?

The seven angels with the seven plagues then came out of the most holy place. [15:6]

What was given to the seven angels?

The seven angels were given seven bowls full of the wrath of God. [15:7]

Until when could no one enter the most holy place?

Until the seven plagues were completed, no one could enter the most holy place. [15:8]

Revelation 16

What were the seven angels told to do?

The seven angels were told to go and pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God's wrath. [16:1]

What happened when the first bowl of God's wrath was poured out?

Ugly and painful sores came on the people who had the mark of the beast. [16:2]

What happened when the second bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

The sea became like the blood of a dead person. [16:3]

What happened when the third bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

The rivers and springs of water became blood. [16:4]

Why was it true and just that God gave these people blood to drink?

It was true and just because these people had poured out the blood of God's saints and prophets. [16:6]

What happened when the fourth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

The sun scorched the people with fire. [16:8]

How did the people respond to these plagues?

The people did not repent or give God glory. [16:9]

What happened when the fifth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

Darkness covered the kingdom of the beast. [16:10]

What happened when the sixth bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

The water of the Euphrates river was dried up to prepare the way for the kings from the east. [16:12]

What were the three unclean spirits going out to do?

The three unclean spirits were going out to gather the kings of the world for the battle on the great day of God. [16:13]

What were the three unclean spirits going out to do?

The three unclean spirits were going out to gather the kings of the world for the battle on the great day of God. [16:14]

What was the name of the place where the kings of the world were brought together?

The name of the place was Armageddon. [16:16]

What happened when the seventh bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A loud voice said, "It is done!" and there was lightning, thunder, and an earthquake. [16:17]

What happened when the seventh bowl of God's wrath was poured out ?

A loud voice said, "It is done!" and there was lightning, thunder, and an earthquake. [16:18]

At this time, what did God call to mind and do?

At this time, God called to mind Babylon the great, and he gave Babylon the cup filled with his wrath. [16:19]

How did the people respond to these plagues?

The people cursed God. [16:21]

Revelation 17

What did the angel say he would show John?

The angel said he would show John the condemnation of the great prostitute. [17:1]

On what was the woman sitting?

The woman was sitting on a beast with seven heads and ten horns. [17:3]

What was in the cup which the woman held in her hand?

The cup was full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality. [17:4]

What was the woman's name?

The woman's name was, "Babylon the Great, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Detestable Things of the Earth". [17:5]

With what was the woman drunk?

The woman was drunk with the blood of the saints and martyrs for Jesus. [17:6]

From where did the beast come on which the woman sat?

The beast came up from the deep, bottomless pit. [17:8]

To where was the beast going?

The beast was going to destruction. [17:8]

What were the seven heads of the beast?

The seven heads were seven hills on which the woman was seated, and were also seven kings. [17:9]

What were the seven heads of the beast?

The seven heads were seven hills on which the woman was seated, and were also seven kings. [17:10]

To where was the beast going?

The beast was going to destruction. [17:11]

What were the ten horns of the beast?

The ten horns were ten kings. [17:12]

What would the kings and the beast do when they were of one mind?

When they were of one mind, they would make war against the Lamb. [17:14]

What were the waters where the prostitute was seated?

The waters were peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages. [17:15]

What would the kings and the beast do to the woman?

They would make the woman desolate and naked, devour her flesh, and burn her with fire. [17:16]

What was the woman that John saw?

The woman that John saw was the great city that rules over the kings of the earth. [17:18]

Revelation 18

What announcement did the angel with great authority make?

The angel announced that Babylon the great had fallen. [18:1]

What announcement did the angel with great authority make?

The angel announced that Babylon the great had fallen. [18:2]

What did the voice from heaven tell God's people to do?

The voice told God's people to come out from Babylon and to not share in her sins. [18:4]

What amount of payment did God give back to Babylon for what she had done?

God paid back Babylon double for what she had done. [18:6]

What plagues overtook Babylon in one day?

Death, mourning, and famine overtook Babylon in one day and she was consumed with fire. [18:8]

How did the kings and merchants of the earth respond when they saw Babylon's judgment?

When the kings and merchants of the earth saw Babylon's judgment, they wept and wailed over her. [18:9]

Why did the kings, merchants and ship's captains stand at a distance from Babylon at her time of judgment?

They stood at a distance because they were afraid of her torment. [18:9]

Why did the kings, merchants and ship's captains stand at a distance from Babylon at her time of judgment?

They stood at a distance because they were afraid of her torment. [18:10]

For what did Babylon long, which vanished in a single hour?

Babylon longed for luxury and splendor, which vanished in a single hour. [18:14]

Why did the kings, merchants and ship's captains stand at a distance from Babylon at her time of judgment?

They stood at a distance because they were afraid of her torment. [18:15]

Why did the kings, merchants and ship's captains stand at a distance from Babylon at her time of judgment?

They stood at a distance because they were afraid of her torment. [18:17]

What question did the ship's captains ask about Babylon?

The ship's captains asked, "What city is like the great city?" [18:18]

What were the saints, apostles, and prophets told to do when Babylon was judged by God?

The saints, apostles, and prophets were told to rejoice when Babylon was judged by God. [18:20]

After her judgment, when would Babylon be seen again?

After her judgment, Babylon would be seen no more. [18:21]

What was found in the great city Babylon for which she was judged?

The blood of prophets, saints, and all who have been killed on the earth was found. [18:24]

Revelation 19**What did the loud voice in heaven say about God's judgments?**

The loud voice in heaven said that God's judgments were true and just. [19:1]

What did the loud voice in heaven say about God's judgments?

The loud voice in heaven said that God's judgments were true and just. [19:2]

Why did God judge the great prostitute?

God judged the great prostitute because she corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality and shed the blood of God's servants. [19:2]

What will happen to the great prostitute forever and ever?

Smoke will rise from the great prostitute forever and ever. [19:3]

What were the servants of God who fear him told to do?

The servants of God were told to praise him. [19:5]

Why did the voice say that the servants of God should rejoice and be very happy?

The servants of God were told to rejoice because the wedding celebration of the Lamb had come. [19:7]

With what is the bride of the Lamb dressed?

The bride is dressed in fine linen, which is the righteous acts of God's holy people. [19:8]

What did the angel say that the testimony about Jesus was?

The angel said that the testimony about Jesus was the spirit of prophecy. [19:10]

What is the name of the one John saw riding the white horse?

John saw the Word of God riding the white horse. [19:11]

What is the name of the one John saw riding the white horse?

John saw the Word of God riding the white horse. [19:12]

What is the name of the one John saw riding the white horse?

John saw the Word of God riding the white horse. [19:13]

How does the Word of God strike down the nations?

Out of the mouth of the Word of God goes a sharp sword which strikes down the nations. [19:15]

What is written on the Word of God's robe and thigh?

On his robe and thigh is written, "King of Kings and Lord of Lords". [19:16]

What were the birds flying overhead called to eat at the great supper?

The birds were called to eat the flesh of kings, commanders, mighty men, horses and their riders, and all men. [19:18]

What were the beast and the kings of the earth setting out to do?

They were setting out to make war with the Word of God and his army. [19:19]

What happened to the beast and the false prophet?

The beast and the false prophet were both thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur. [19:20]

What happened to the rest of those fighting against the Word of God?

The rest were killed by the sword coming out of the mouth of the Word of God. [19:21]

Revelation 20

What did the angel coming down from heaven have with him?

The angel had the key to the endless pit and a great chain in his hand. [20:1]

How long would Satan remain bound?

Satan would remain bound for a thousand years. [20:2]

What did the angel do with Satan?

The angel threw Satan into the bottomless pit. [20:3]

How long would Satan remain bound?

Satan would remain bound for a thousand years. [20:3]

What would Satan not be able to do while he was bound?

Satan would not be able to deceive the nations while he was bound. [20:3]

What happened to those who had refused to receive the mark of the beast?

Those who had refused to receive the mark of the beast came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. [20:4]

When would the rest of the dead come to life?

The rest of the dead would come to life when the thousand years were ended. [20:5]

What would those who took part in the first resurrection do?

Those who took part in the first resurrection would be priests of God and Christ and would reign with him for a thousand years. [20:6]

What will Satan do at the end of the thousand years?

At the end of the thousand years, Satan will be released to go out to deceive the nations. [20:8]

What happened when the camp of the saints was surrounded?

When the camp of the saints was surrounded, fire came down from heaven and devoured Gog and Magog. [20:9]

What was done with the devil at this time?

The devil was thrown into the lake of fire to be tormented forever. [20:10]

By what were the dead judged before the great white throne?

The dead were judged by what was recorded in the books, the result of what they had done. [20:12]

What is the second death?

The second death is the lake of fire. [20:14]

What happened to all who were not written in the Book of Life?

All who were not found written in the Book of Life were thrown into the lake of fire. [20:15]

Revelation 21

What did John see had happened to the first heaven and earth?

John saw that the first heaven and earth had passed away. [21:1]

What had replaced the first heaven and earth?

A new heaven and earth had replaced the first heaven and earth. [21:1]

What came down from heaven?

The holy city, new Jerusalem, came down from heaven. [21:2]

Where did the voice from the throne say that God would now dwell?

The voice said that God would now dwell with human beings. [21:3]

What had now passed away?

Death, grieving, crying, and pain had now passed away. [21:4]

What name did the one seated on the throne call himself?

The one seated on the throne called himself the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. [21:6]

What happens to the faithless, sexually immoral, and idolaters?

The faithless, sexually immoral, and idolaters have their place in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. [21:8]

What is the bride, the wife of the Lamb?

The bride, the wife of the Lamb, is the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God. [21:10]

What was written on the gates of new Jerusalem?

The names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel were written on the gates of new Jerusalem. [21:12]

What was written on the foundations of new Jerusalem?

The names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb were written on the foundations of new Jerusalem. [21:14]

In what shape was new Jerusalem laid out?

New Jerusalem was laid out in a square. [21:16]

Of what was the city built?

The city was built of pure gold, like clear glass. [21:18]

What is the temple in new Jerusalem?

The temple in new Jerusalem is the Lord God and the Lamb. [21:22]

What is the source of light in new Jerusalem?

The source of light in new Jerusalem is the glory of God and the Lamb. [21:23]

What will never enter new Jerusalem?

Nothing unclean will ever enter new Jerusalem. [21:27]

Revelation 22

What did John see flowing from the throne of God?

John saw the river of the water of life flowing from the throne of God. [22:1]

For what are the leaves of the tree of life?

The leaves of the tree of life are for the healing of the nations. [22:2]

What will there no longer be in the city?

There will no longer be any curse, and there will be no more night. [22:3]

Where will the throne of God and of the Lamb be?

The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city. [22:3]

What will there no longer be in the city?

There will no longer be any curse, and there will be no more night. [22:5]

What must a person do to be blessed by this book?

A person must obey the words of the prophecy of this book to be blessed. [22:7]

What did the angel tell John to do when John prostrated himself at the feet of the angel?

The angel told John to worship God. [22:8]

What did the angel tell John to do when John prostrated himself at the feet of the angel?

The angel told John to worship God. [22:9]

Why was John told not to seal up the words of the prophecy of this book?

John was told not to seal up the words of the prophecy of this book because the time was near. [22:10]

What did the Lord say he was bringing with him when he comes?

The Lord said he was bringing his reward with him when he comes. [22:12]

What must those do who want to have the right to eat from the tree of life?

Those who want to have the right to eat from the tree of life must wash their robes. [22:14]

How does Jesus say he is related to King David?

Jesus says he is the root and descendant of King David. [22:16]

What will happen to anyone who adds to the prophecy of this book?

Anyone who adds to the prophecy of this book will receive the plagues written about in this book. [22:18]

What will happen to anyone who takes away from the prophecy of this book?

Anyone who takes away from the prophecy of this book will have his share of the tree of life taken away. [22:19]

What are Jesus' last words in this book?

Jesus' last words are, "Yes! I am coming soon". [22:20]

What is the last word in this book?

The last word in this book is "Amen". [22:21]

translationWords

Uses:

- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 8:3-5
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 18:18-20
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 20:9-10

Uses:

- Revelation 11 General Notes

shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17-18
- 2 Samuel 13:13-14
- Luke 20:11-12
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H6172, H7022, H7036, H8103, H8106, G127, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3856, G5195

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 16:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

accuse, accuses, accused, accusing, accuser, accusers, accusation, accusations

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:38-41
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H8799, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:10](#)

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: euphemism)
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [sleep with](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:12-14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:27-28
- Matthew 12:38-40
- [Revelation 02:22-23](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [13:06](#) ”Do not commit **adultery**.”

- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

Uses:

- **Revelation 2:22-23**

adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 06:2-5
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 08:1-3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- [Revelation 01:7-8](#)
- Ruth 01:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 4:7](#)
- [Revelation 11:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)

- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 21:21-22

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 23:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 8:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 9:13-15](#)

- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 16:4-7

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28-29
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 15:1](#)

translation Words amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders

- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 17:6-7

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- (See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 19:3-4
- Revelation 22:20-21

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God!
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 5:1-2
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 8:3-5
- Revelation 8:6-7

- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 8:12
- Revelation 8:13
- Revelation 9:1-2
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 10:1-2
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 10:8-9
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 14:19-20
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 15:5-6
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:2
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 21:11-13
- Revelation 21:16-17
- Revelation 22:1-2

- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:8-9
- Revelation 22:16

anger, angered, angry

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:13-14
- Matthew 26:6-9
- Psalms 018:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 1 John 02:27-29
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:17-18](#)

antichrist, antichrists

Definition:

The term “antichrist” refers to a person or teaching that is against Jesus Christ and his work. There are many antichrists in the world.

- The apostle John wrote that a person is the antichrist if he deceives people by saying that Jesus is not the Messiah or if he denies that Jesus is both God and human.
- The Bible also teaches that there is a general spirit of antichrist in the world which opposes Jesus’ work.
- The New Testament book of Revelation explains that there will be a man called “the antichrist” who will be revealed in the end times. This man will attempt to destroy God’s people, but he will be defeated by Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means “Christ-opposer” or “enemy of Christ” or “person who is against Christ.”
- The phrase “spirit of the antichrist” could also be translated as “spirit that is against Christ” or “(someone) teaching lies about Christ” or “attitude of believing lies about Christ” or “spirit that teaches lies about Christ.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [reveal](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:18-19
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 John 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G500

Uses:

- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)

apostle, apostles, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

Uses:

- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 18:18-20
- Revelation 21:14-15

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, covenant, atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:14-15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 07:89
- [Revelation 11:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:19](#)

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:12-13
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Rome, Paul, [Ephesus](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 16:6-8
- Acts 27:1-2
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- Romans 16:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G773

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)

authority, authorities

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35-36
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:4-5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:21-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

Uses:

- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 20:4

avenge, avenges, avenged, avenging, avenger, revenge, vengeance**Definition:**

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- Romans 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Uses:

- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 18:21-22

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), Canaan, [curse](#), donkey, [Euphrates River](#), Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:15-16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- [Revelation 02:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:14-15](#)

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, thresh, [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:38-40
- Judges 07:13-14
- Numbers 05:15
- [Revelation 06:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:5-6](#)

bear, bears**Definition:**

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

Bible References:**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1677, G715

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)

beast, beasts

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 13:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 13:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 13:11-12](#)

- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 13:18
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 16:2
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:11
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:9-10

believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”

- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41-42
- John 01:12-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:3-4
- 1 Corinthians 06:1-3
- 1 Corinthians 09:3-6
- 2 Corinthians 06:14-16
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- 1 John 03:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared

over the heads of all the **believers**.

- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- [Revelation 03 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14-16
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 John 04:7-8
- Mark 01:9-11
- Mark 12:6-7
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)
- Romans 16:6-8
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

Uses:

- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:13-15](#)

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14-16
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, G273, G274, G298, G338, G410, G423

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemous, blasphemies

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, [slander](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:8-10
- Mark 14:63-65
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 26:65-66
- Psalms 074:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)

- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 17:3-5

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 20:5-6
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:14-15

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 7:13-14
- Revelation 8:6-7
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:11-13

Book of Life

Definition:

The term “Book of Life” is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as “the Lamb’s Book of Life.” This could be translated as “the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God.” The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people’s sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for “book” can also mean “scroll” or “letter” or “writing” or “legal document.” It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: [everlasting](#), [lamb](#), [life](#), [sacrifice](#), [scroll](#))

Bible References:

- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 069:28-29
- [Revelation 03:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 20:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2416, H5612, G976, G2222

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 17:8](#)
- [Revelation 20:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 20:13-15](#)
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- Habakkuk 03:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 02:3-4
- Psalms 058:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:1-2](#)

bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:4-5
- Matthew 02:11-12
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

translationWords *bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down*

Uses:

- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 4:9-11

breastplate, breastplates, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, pierce, [priest](#), [temple](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17-18
- [Revelation 09:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833 , H8302, G2382

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)

breath, breathe, breathes, breathed, breathing

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: Adam, Paul, [word of God](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17-18
- Ecclesiastes 08:8-9
- Job 04:7-9
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 13:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, H7309, G1709, G1720, G4157

Uses:

- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 13:15-17

bride, brides, bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16-17
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)
- [Revelation 19:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 21:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 21:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 22:17](#)

bridegroom, bridegrooms

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:29-30
- Luke 05:33-35
- Mark 02:18-19
- Mark 02:20-21
- Matthew 09:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 2:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 9:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 22:8-9

burden, burdens, burdened, burdensome

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:24-25](#)

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:17-18

captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), exile, [prison](#), seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5-6
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 43:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:9-10](#)

chariot, chariots, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29-31
- Acts 08:36-38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:14-15](#)
- [Revelation 12:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 21:11-13](#)

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:1-3
- Colossians 03:12-14
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:6-8
- Matthew 24:19-22

- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Uses:

- Revelation 17:12-14

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Uses:

- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:5-6

church, churches, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 14:23-26
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:15-17
- Ephesians 05:22-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Philippians 04:14-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 3:21-22
- Revelation 22:16

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”

translation Words *clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean*

- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- Psalms 051:7-9
- Proverbs 20:29-30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Luke 05:12-13
- Acts 08:6-8
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- James 04:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:48-49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)

column, columns, pillar, pillars

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 10:1-2](#)

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term to “command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 14:11-12

commander, commanders

Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14-16
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

Uses:

- [Revelation 19:17-18](#)

commit, commits, committed, committing, commitment**Definition:**

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), promise, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:6-7
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Psalm 058:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:1-2](#)

condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- Job 09:27-29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:7-8
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:21-22
- Romans 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:1-2](#)

corrupt, corrupts, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:11-12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

Uses:

- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:54-55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:24-26
- Psalms 065:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

Uses:

- Revelation 11:1-2

cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15-16
- Luke 14:4-6
- Hebrews 09:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

Uses:

- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 18:11-12

create, creates, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

Uses:

- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 13:7-8

creature, creatures

Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 04:10-12
- Ezekiel 01:7-9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- [Revelation 19:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H255, H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G2226, G2937, G2938

Uses:

- [Revelation 4:6](#)
- [Revelation 4:7](#)
- [Revelation 4:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 5:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 6:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 6:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 7:11-12](#)

- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 19:3-4

crown, crowns, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:1-3
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- Matthew 27:27-29
- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

Uses:

- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 4:4-5
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 6:1-2
- Revelation 9:7-9
- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:3-4
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 19:11-13

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:22-24
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:33-34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

***39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!” ***39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. ***40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die. ***40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers. ***43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!” ***43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.” ***44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:8-9](#)

cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:14-16
- Acts 08:6-8
- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 06:17-19
- Luke 08:43-44
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the

lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. *44:08 Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah." *49:02] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3444, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G4991, G5198, G5199

Uses:

- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 22:1-2

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- **Revelation 16:20-21**
- **Revelation 22:3-5**

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- 2 Samuel 22:10-12
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Isaiah 05:29-30
- Jeremiah 13:15-17
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

Uses:

- Revelation 8:12
- Revelation 16:10-11

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:8-10
- Acts 02:25-26
- Acts 13:21-22
- Luke 01:30-33
- Mark 02:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. ***17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. ***17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

***17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. ***17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. ***17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Uses:

- Revelation 3:7-8
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 22:16

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:62-64
- Micah 06:11-12

translation *Words deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfuln*

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 21:26-27

defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

translationWords *defile, defiles, defiled, defiling, be defiled, are defiled, was defiled, were defiled*

Uses:

- Revelation 14:3-5

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: demon-possessed, [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 02:18-20
- James 03:15-18
- Luke 04:35-37
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 04:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the **demon** left her.

- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

Uses:

- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 18:1-3

descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” ***04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” ***05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” ***17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**” ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 22:16](#)

desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

Uses:

- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 12:13-14
- Revelation 17:3-5

desolate, desolation, desolations

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [devastate](#), [ruin](#), [waste](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:17-19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:9-11
- Luke 11:16-17
- Matthew 12:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H820, H910, H1327, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4876, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7612, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:16-17](#)

detest, detested, detestable

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.” (See also: divination, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 43:32-34
- Jeremiah 07:29-30
- Leviticus 11:9-10
- Luke 16:14-15
- [Revelation 17:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1602, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767, G5723, G3404

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:3-5](#)

devour, devours, devoured, devouring

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:8-9
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 12:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 17:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)

- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 9:5-6
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 19:21
- Revelation 20:5-6
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 21 General Notes
- Revelation 21:3-4
- Revelation 21:7-8

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:12-14
- Luke 07:33-35
- Luke 21:34-35
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 17:6-7](#)

eagle, eagles

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: Daniel, [free](#), Nebuchadnezzar, [power](#))

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23-24
- Daniel 07:4-5
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- [Revelation 04:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

Uses:

- [Revelation 4:7](#)
- [Revelation 8:13](#)
- [Revelation 12:13-14](#)

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51-53
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Zechariah 06:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)

- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 8:6-7
- Revelation 8:13
- Revelation 9:1-2
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 12:13-14
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 21:1-2

Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:9-10
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- Matthew 02:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:8-9](#)

elder, elders

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Uses:

- Revelation 4:4-5
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 7:13-14
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 19:3-4

Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Elijah, Naaman, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Luke 04:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H477

endure, endures, endured, enduring, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:1-3
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 21:16-19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- **Revelation 01:9-11**
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H386, H3201, H3557, H3885, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2553, G2594, G3114, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 2:20-21
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 18:11-12
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 22:3-5
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:8-9

Ephesus, Ephesian, Ephesians

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 19:1-2
- Ephesians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6

- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 14 General Notes
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 19:3-4
- Revelation 20 General Notes
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 21 General Notes
- Revelation 22:3-5

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:13-15](#)
- [Revelation 16:12-14](#)

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), good, [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 18:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)

ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown**Definition:**

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 9:7-9
- Revelation 22:3-5

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 2:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 13:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14

- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 19:11-13

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), disobey)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 09:1-2
- Jeremiah 02:18-19
- Proverbs 02:20-22
- [Revelation 21:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: G571

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:7-8](#)

false prophet, false prophets

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:1-3
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5578

Uses:

- [Revelation 16:12-14](#)
- [Revelation 19:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

famine, famines

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11-13
- Genesis 12:10-13
- Genesis 45:4-6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25-27
- Matthew 24:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 18:7-8](#)

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 06 General Notes
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 19:5

fig, figs**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 13:6-7
- Mark 11:13-14
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:12-14](#)

fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 2:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 3:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 8:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 8:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 8:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 9:18-19](#)

- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 20:9-10

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- Luke 02:6-7
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- Psalms 105:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 19:21

flood, floods, flooded, flooding, floodwaters

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 07:6-7
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:24-25
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H2229, H2230, H2975, H3999, H5104, H5140, H5158, H5674, H6556, H7641, H7857, H7858, H8241, G2627, G4132, G4215, G4216

Uses:

- Revelation 12:15-18

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flock, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7-9
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:21-22](#)

found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.” (See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:28-30
- Matthew 13:34-35
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:8](#)

- [Revelation 21:14-15](#)
- [Revelation 21:18-20](#)

fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:17-19
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- James 03:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

Uses:

- [Revelation 8:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

free, frees, freed, freeing, freedom, freely, freeman, freewill, liberty**Definition:**

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G572, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

Uses:

- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 22:17

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:20-22
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Uses:

- **Revelation 17:16-17**

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- Genesis 19:26-28
- Proverbs 17:3-4
- Psalms 021:9-10
- [Revelation 09:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G2575

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:1-2](#)

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:23-25
- Acts 10:17-18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- Matthew 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:11-13](#)
- [Revelation 21:21-22](#)
- [Revelation 21:23-25](#)
- [Revelation 22:14-15](#)

Gentile, Gentiles

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 02:30-32
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672### Uses:
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Samuel 11:6-8
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 11:17-18
- Acts 24:17-19
- James 01:17-18
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:10-12](#)

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to “give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- Luke 18:42-43
- Luke 02:8-9
- John 12:27-29
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:16-17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23:07](#) Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glorify to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- [25:06](#) Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- [37:01](#) When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- [37:08](#) Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's glory if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

Uses:

- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 04 General Notes
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 11:13-14
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 21:11-13
- Revelation 21:23-25

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 4:4-5
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:18-20
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:6
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 22:1-2
- Revelation 22:18-19

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 02:22-23
- 1 John 03:1-3
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 23:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:21-22
- Revelation 14:1-2

god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

Uses:

- **Revelation 02 General Notes**
- **Revelation 2:14-15**
- **Revelation 2:20-21**
- **Revelation 9:20-21**
- **Revelation 21:7-8**
- **Revelation 22:14-15**

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:6-7
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 3:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 4:4-5](#)
- [Revelation 8:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 9:7-9](#)

- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 15:5-6
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 18:11-12
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 21:14-15
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:21-22

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14-15
- Philippians 02:22-24
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

Uses:

- **Revelation 14:6-7**

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)

- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

grape, grapes, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), vineyard, [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H2490, H3196, H5563, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)

grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:5-6
- Genesis 50:4-6
- John 19:40-42
- Luke 23:52-53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Romans 03:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:8-9](#)

Greek, Grecian

Facts:

The term “Greek” refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term “Grecian” means “Greek-speaking.”

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as “Greeks” in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase “Grecian Jews” referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the “Hebraic Jews” who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate “Grecian” could include, “Greek-speaking” or “culturally Greek” or “Greek.”
- When referring to non-Jews, “Greek” could be translated as “Gentile.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), Greece, [Hebrew](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:28-30
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:9-11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:10-12](#)

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms “Hades” and “Sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “Sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “Hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “Hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “Sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “Hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the words “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 44:27-29
- Jonah 02:1-2
- Luke 10:13-15
- Luke 16:22-23
- Matthew 11:23-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- [Revelation 01:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86

Uses:

- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 20:13-15

hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm

Facts:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, “hail” is used in greeting someone and can mean, “hello” or “greetings to you.”

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called “hailstones.”
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word “hail” that is a formal greeting in older English literally means “rejoice” and could be translated as “Greetings!” or “Hello!”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 27:27-29
- Matthew 28:8-10
- Psalms 078:47-49
- Psalms 148:7-8
- [Revelation 08:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H417, H1258, H1259, G5463, G5464

Uses:

- [Revelation 8:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 11:19](#)
- [Revelation 16:20-21](#)

hard, harder, hardest, harden, hardens, hardened, hardening, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:22-23
- Deuteronomy 15:7-8
- Exodus 14:4-5

- Hebrews 04:6-7
- John 12:39-40
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H280, H386, H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5539, H5564, H5646, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6277, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G1425, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912, G4927

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)

harp, harps, harpist, harpists

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Psalm 033:1-3
- [Revelation 05:8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:8](#)
- [Revelation 14:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 15:2](#)
- [Revelation 18:21-22](#)

harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:10-11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9-10
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

Uses:

- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 14:19-20

head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54

translation *Wordshead, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded*

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H1627, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Uses:

- Revelation 18:7-8

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 04 General Notes
- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 8:13
- Revelation 9:1-2
- Revelation 10:1-2
- Revelation 10:3-4
- Revelation 10:8-9
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:13-14
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 11:19
- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:3-4
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 13:13-14

- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 15 General Notes
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 15:5-6
- Revelation 16 General Notes
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:18-20
- Revelation 19 General Notes
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 20 General Notes
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10

Hebrew, Hebrews

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:14-15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:12-13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447### Uses:
- [Revelation 9:10-12](#)
- [Revelation 16:15-16](#)

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), abyss)

Bible References:

- James 03:5-6
- Luke 12:4-5
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:32-33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- [Revelation 20:13-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 14 General Notes
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20 General Notes
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 21:7-8

holy city, holy cities

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “holy city” refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for “holy” and “city” that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](#), [holy](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 04:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- [Revelation 21:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 21:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 22:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G40, G4172

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 21:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 22:18-19](#)

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20-21
- 2 Kings 19:20-22
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14-15
- Luke 04:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H376, H6918, G40, G3741

Uses:

- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:21-22
- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:17

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 11:7-10
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:21-23
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 03:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

Uses:

- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 3:7-8](#)

- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 20:5-6
- Revelation 22:10-11

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- Proverbs 05:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G2781, G3192, G3193

Uses:

- [Revelation 10:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 10:10-11](#)

honor, honors

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Uses:

- [Revelation 4:9-11](#)

- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 21:26-27

horn, horns, horned

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), deer, goat, [power](#) royal, [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- Jeremiah 17:1-2
- Psalms 022:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 13:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 17:6-7](#)

horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 6:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 9:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 9:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 19:11-13](#)
- [Revelation 19:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 19:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 19:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 19:21](#)

hour, hours

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: hour)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:29-30
- Acts 10:30-33
- Mark 14:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G5610

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 3:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 18:18-20](#)

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [image of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:20-22
- Romans 01:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179, G5481

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:13-14](#)

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast

- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 16:2
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:4

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
- “who belong to Christ”
- “because you believe in Christ”
- “because Christ has saved us”
- “in service to the Lord”
- “relying on the Lord”
- “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:4-6
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Timothy 01:1-2
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Galatians 02:17-19
- Philemon 01:4-7
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

- Romans 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 14:13

incense, incenses

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:8](#)
- [Revelation 8:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- **Revelation 21:7-8**

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Uses:

- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 7:4-6
- Revelation 21:11-13

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G2466

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:4-5
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Uses:

- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 21:11-13

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 04:15-16
- 1 Timothy 01:1-2
- 2 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 10:36-38
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Luke 24:19-20

- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 14:11-12

- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 22:16
- Revelation 22:20-21

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:9-11
- John 02:13-14
- Matthew 28:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 3:9-11](#)

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Elijah, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 09:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:30-32
- [Revelation 02:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H348, G2403

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:20-21](#)

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves. ***44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money. ***44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison. ***44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?" ***44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 22:8-9

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. ***08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt. ***08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him. ***08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. ***08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. ***09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29-30
- Acts 16:32-34

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- **Revelation 11:10-12**
- **Revelation 12:11-12**
- **Revelation 18:18-20**
- **Revelation 19:7-8**

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Jacob, [Jew](#), Judah, Judea, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- Luke 03:33-35
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

judge, judges

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:26-28
- Luke 11:18-20
- Luke 12:13-15
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 19:11-13](#)

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, **judge**, judgment day, **just**, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:13-15
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 6:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 11:18](#)
- [Revelation 14:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18:18-20](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20:4](#)
- [Revelation 20:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 20:13-15](#)

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, **judge, righteous, righteous**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 18:6-8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:3-4
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- James 02:21-24
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 19:11-13](#)

kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:20-21
- Genesis 01:24-25
- Mark 09:28-29
- Matthew 13:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:6-7](#)

king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:11
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 17:18
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 21:23-25

kingdom, kingdoms

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36-37
- Mark 03:23-25
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 16:27-28
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 17:12-14

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, **reveal**, understand, **wise**)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4

translation *Words* know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, un

- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

Uses:

- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 12:11-12

labor, in labor, labor pains

Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), [last day](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:19-20
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Isaiah 13:6-8
- Jeremiah 13:20-21
- Psalms 048:4-6
- Romans 08:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H2470, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6045, H6887, H8513, G3449, G4944, G5088, G5604, G5605

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:1-2](#)

labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:7-9
- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:4-6
- John 04:37-38
- Luke 10:1-2
- Matthew 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H3018, H3021, H3022, H3023, H3205, H5447, H4522, H4639, H5445, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4704, G4866, G4904, G5389

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 14:13](#)

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- John 01:29-31
- John 01:35-36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3-4
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" ***11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. ***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." ***45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." ***48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. ***48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

Uses:

- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 6:1-2
- Revelation 6:3-4
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 7:13-14
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 21:14-15
- Revelation 21:21-22
- Revelation 21:23-25

- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)
- [Revelation 22:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

lamp, lamps

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:34-36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Matthew 25:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

Uses:

- [Revelation 4:4-5](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)
- [Revelation 21:23-25](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

lampstand, lampstands

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 01:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 1:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 2:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:1-3
- Isaiah 02:1-2
- James 05:1-3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

Uses:

- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)

leopard, leopards

Facts:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), Daniel, prey, [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 07:6-7
- Hosea 13:7-8
- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)
- Song of Solomon 04:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5245, H5246

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:33-34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 2:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 2:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 2:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 3:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 4:6](#)
- [Revelation 4:7](#)
- [Revelation 4:9-11](#)

- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 6:1-2
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 8:13
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 22:1-2
- Revelation 22:14-15
- Revelation 22:17

light, lights, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten, enlightened

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 2 Corinthians 04:5-6
- Acts 26:15-18
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- John 01:4-5
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 06:22-24
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Uses:

- Revelation 8:12
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 21:23-25

like, likeminded, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, alike, unlike

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, [image](#), perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:4-6
- Mark 08:24-26
- Matthew 17:1-2
- Matthew 18:1-3
- Psalms 073:4-5
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

Uses:

- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 4:7

lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

Uses:

- [Revelation 4:7](#)
- [Revelation 5:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 9:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 13:1-2](#)

lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: **God**, **Jesus**, **ruler**, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:8-9
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 19:6
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 21:21-22
- Revelation 22:3-5
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:20-21

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 3:19-20
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 22:14-15

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), Dan, Ephraim, Ezra, [false god](#), Jacob, [Judah](#), pagan, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: bread, [desert](#), grain, [heaven](#), Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:16-17](#)

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [angel](#), Daniel, messenger, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:12-13
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Ezra 08:8-11
- [Revelation 12:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G3413

Uses:

- [Revelation 12:7-9](#)

might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

Uses:

- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:14
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 20:11-12

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38
- [James 04:08](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likemindedtranslation

Uses:

- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:12-14

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:15-18
- Acts 04:21-22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3

- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 16:12-14

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:20-21
- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Matthew 17:3-4
- Romans 05:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Uses:

- Revelation 15:3-4

mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 18:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 18:18-20](#)

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), learned men)

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:22-24
- Matthew 02:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

mystery, mysteries, hidden truth, hidden truths

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

Uses:

- [Revelation 10:5-7](#)

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12-14
- 2 Timothy 02:19-21
- Acts 04:5-7
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 09:26-27
- Genesis 12:1-3
- Genesis 35:9-10
- Matthew 18:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 21:11-13

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), Dan, Jacob, Sea of Galilee, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- Matthew 04:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

nation, nations

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Canaan, [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Uses:

- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 21:23-25
- Revelation 21:26-27
- Revelation 22:1-2

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word “swear” means is “use foul language.” This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 06:26-29

- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

Uses:

- Revelation 10:5-7

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. “Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, **command**, disobey, **kingdom**, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedie

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:8-9

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

olive, olives

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- James 03:11-12
- Luke 16:5-7
- Psalms 052:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)

palm, palms

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:9-10](#)

patient, patiently, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- [Revelation 02:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 2:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 2:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 2:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 3:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 13:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)

peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. *50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7521, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G425, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 6:3-4

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

Uses:

- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 11:8-9
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 16:20-21
- Revelation 17:15

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 21:3-4

pit, pits, pitfall

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, [hell](#), [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:16-18
- Luke 06:39-40
- Proverbs 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1360, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 9:10-12](#)
- [Revelation 11:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 17:8](#)
- [Revelation 20:1-3](#)

plague, plagues

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:10-11
- [Revelation 09:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, H7752, G3061, G3148, G4127

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 9:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 11:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 15:1](#)
- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 15:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 16:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 16:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 18:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 18:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 21:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 22:18-19](#)

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Jude 01:24-25
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 9:18-19
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 20:5-6

praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

Uses:

- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 19:5

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Uses:

- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 8:3-5

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 20:5-6

prince, princes, princess, princesses

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52-53

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5083, G5084, G5438, G5439

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonmentstranslationV

Uses:

- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 20:7-8

proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3853, G4135

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 10:5-7](#)
- [Revelation 14:6-7](#)

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 2:20-21
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 13 General Notes
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 18 General Notes

- Revelation 18:18-20
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 20 General Notes
- Revelation 22 General Notes
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:8-9
- Revelation 22:10-11
- Revelation 22:18-19

prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [sexual immorality](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 21:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

Uses:

- [Revelation 17:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 17:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 17:15](#)
- [Revelation 17:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)

prostrate, prostrated

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, [bow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28-29
- [Revelation 19:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812, G4098

Uses:

- [Revelation 19:3-4](#)

proud, proudly, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12-14
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19-20
- Luke 01:50-51

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. ***34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H2121, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H6580, H7293, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7407, H7830, H8597, G212, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426, G5450

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:5-6](#)

punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:9-10
- Acts 04:21-22
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:13-15
- Luke 23:15-17
- Matthew 25:44-46

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. *49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:9-10](#)

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 15:5-6
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:21-22

queen, queens

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#). Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:26-28
- Esther 01:16-18
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:7-8](#)

reap, reaps, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping

Definition:

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate to “reap” and “reaper” could include to “harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”).

(See also: [good news](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:29-30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4672, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2327

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:14-16](#)

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:4

reed, reeds**Facts:**

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:14-16
- Luke 07:24-26
- Matthew 11:7-8
- Matthew 12:19-21
- Psalm 068:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2063, G2563

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 11:15](#)
- [Revelation 11:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 19:6](#)
- [Revelation 20:4](#)
- [Revelation 20:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:29-32
- Luke 24:45-47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

Uses:

- Revelation 02 General Notes
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 2:20-21
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 03 General Notes
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:19-20
- Revelation 07 General Notes
- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:10-11

rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Definition:

The term to “rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:28-30
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 14:13](#)

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), raise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:12-14
- 1 Peter 03:21-22
- Hebrews 11:35-38
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27-28
- Luke 20:34-36
- Matthew 22:23-24
- Matthew 22:29-30
- Philippians 03:8-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

Uses:

- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 20:5-6](#)

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Jacob, [Joseph \(OT\)](#), Leah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 07 General Notes
- Revelation 10 General Notes
- Revelation 15:3-4

reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Isaiah 40:9-10
- Luke 06:35-36
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- [Revelation 11:18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

Uses:

- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 22:12-13

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:32-33
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Lamentations 02:3-4

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 5:1-2

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: **evil**, **faithful**, good, **holy**, integrity, **just**, law, law, **obey**, **pure**, **righteous**, **sin**, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

Uses:

- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 19:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 22:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 22:10-11](#)

robe, robes, robed**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22-24
- Luke 20:45-47
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2066, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 6:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 7:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 19:11-13](#)
- [Revelation 19:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 22:14-15](#)

rod, rods

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:22-24
- Exodus 27:9-10
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:26-29](#)
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 12:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 19:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 21:14-15](#)
- [Revelation 21:16-17](#)

rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11-12
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:41-42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25-28
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)

- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 17:18

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31-32
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 10:13-15
- Matthew 11:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:12-14](#)
- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:14-15](#)
- [Revelation 2:20-21](#)

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Acts 13:9-10
- Job 01:6-8
- Mark 08:33-34
- Zechariah 03:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

Uses:

- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:24-25
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 20:9-10

save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:1-3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30-32

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Uses:

- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 19:1-2

scroll, scrolls

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:1-3
- Luke 04:16-17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- [Revelation 05:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 5:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 6:12-14](#)
- [Revelation 10:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 10:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 10:10-11](#)

seal, seals, sealed, sealing, unsealed

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:3-4
- Isaiah 29:11-12
- John 06:26-27
- Matthew 27:65-66
- [Revelation 05:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

Uses:

- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 5:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 6:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 6:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 6:12-14](#)
- [Revelation 7:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 8:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 9:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 20:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 22:10-11](#)

send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 10:40-41
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 11:10-12](#)
- [Revelation 22:6-7](#)

serpent, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, vipers

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), disobey, Eden, [evil](#), offspring, prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 23:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 12:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 12:13-14](#)
- [Revelation 12:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 20:1-3](#)

serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, law, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:3-4
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

Uses:

- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 2:20-21
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 21:7-8
- Revelation 22:14-15

shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), Canaan, [church](#), [Moses](#), pastor, [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

Uses:

- **Revelation 7:15-17**

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- John 02:17-19

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

Uses:

- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:3-4
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 19:19-20

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Christ](#), dedicate, Jacob, [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, *evil*, *flesh*, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 20 General Notes](#)

slander, slanders, slandered, slanderers, slandering, slanderous

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:12-13
- 1 Timothy 03:11-13
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5006, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060, G6022

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:8-9](#)

slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Isaiah 34:1-2
- Jeremiah 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969, G5408

Uses:

- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

snow, snowed, snowing

Facts:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Lebanon, [pure](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:6-7
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3-4
- Psalms 147:15-16
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7949, H7950, H8517, G5510

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:12-13
- Matthew 10:14-15
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:8-9](#)

Son of God, Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit. Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), ancestor, [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:9-10
- Acts 09:20-22
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- John 03:16-18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:25-27
- [Revelation 02:18-19](#)
- Romans 08:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**"
- **24:09** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**"?
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God.**"
- **37:05** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**"
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God!**"
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

Uses:

- **Revelation 2:18-19**

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:54-56
- Daniel 07:13-14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:3-5
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Psalms 080:17-18
- [Revelation 14:14-16](#) {{tag>publish ktlink}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

Uses:

- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 14:14-16

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), ancestor, [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 21:7-8

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft**Definition:**

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [demon](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- [Revelation 09:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)
- [Revelation 21:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 22:14-15](#)

soul, souls

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:40-42
- Genesis 49:5-6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:19-21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:46-47
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Psalms 019:7-8
- [Revelation 20:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 20:4](#)
- [Revelation 21 General Notes](#)

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 02 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 5:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 22:6-7](#)

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), majesty)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:25-27
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Ezekiel 28:6-7
- Luke 04:5-7
- Psalms 089:44-45
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:23-25](#)
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

strength, strengthen, strengthens, strengthened, strengthening

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.” (See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:10-11

- Luke 10:25-28
- Psalm 021:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H905, H1082, H1369, H1396, H1679, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H2633, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4206, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5332, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7293, H7296, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8510, H8632, H8633, G461, G772, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1849, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

Uses:

- Revelation 3:7-8

stumbling block, stumbling blocks, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: stumble, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:22-23
- Galatians 05:11-12
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Romans 09:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G3037, G4349, G4625

Uses:

- [Revelation 2:14-15](#)

suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- **Revelation 01:9-11**
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

Uses:

- **Revelation 1:9-11**
- **Revelation 2:8-9**
- **Revelation 2:10-11**
- **Revelation 2:22-23**

sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, [judge](#), Lot, rebel, [Sodom](#), godly)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:23-25
- Isaiah 34:8-10
- Luke 17:28-29
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G2303

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)
- [Revelation 9:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 21:7-8](#)

sword, swords, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Matthew 26:55-56
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

Uses:

- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 6:3-4
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:13-14
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 19:21

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:57-59
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864### Uses:
- [Revelation 2:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 3:9-11](#)

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Acts 03:7-8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:45-46
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

Uses:

- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 11:19
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 15:5-6
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 21:21-22

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), tabernacle, [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:1-2
- Numbers 04:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. ***14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. ***18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4150

Uses:

- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)

tent, tents, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:44-45
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:15-17](#)

terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Luke 21:7-9
- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 28:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:13-14](#)

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:19-22
- Acts 15:10-11
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Isaiah 07:13-15
- James 01:12-13
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Psalm 026:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 3:9-11

testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”

- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- Micah 06:3-5
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Mark 01:43-44
- John 01:6-8
- John 03:31-33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 13:30-31
- Romans 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:11-12
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 22:16
- Revelation 22:18-19
- Revelation 22:20-21

thief, thieves, rob, robs, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [crime](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [Samaria](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33-34
- Mark 14:47-50
- Proverbs 06:30-31
- [Revelation 03:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H6782, H7703, G727, G1888, G2417, G2812, G3027

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:3-4](#)

throne, thrones, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 19:28
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 2:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 3:21-22](#)
- [Revelation 4:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 4:4-5](#)
- [Revelation 4:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 7:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 7:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 7:15-17](#)

- Revelation 8:3-5
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 19:3-4
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 21:3-4
- Revelation 22:1-2
- Revelation 22:3-5

time, timely, times, untimely

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: age, [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:6-8
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11-12
- Matthew 08:28-29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- [Revelation 14:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H116, H227, H268, H310, H570, H865, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3706, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6049, H6235, H6256, H6258, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3379, G3461, G3568, G3763, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4277, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

Uses:

- Revelation 14:14-16

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors

Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), Job, Savior, [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:7-9
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- [Revelation 11:10-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G928, G929, G930, G931, G2558, G2851, G3600

Uses:

- [Revelation 11:10-12](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 18:9-10](#)

tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 5:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 5:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 7:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 7:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 11:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 14:6-7](#)

tribulation

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 04:16-17
- Mark 13:17-20
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9-11
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G2346, G2347

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:13-14](#)

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:7-8
- 3 John 01:5-8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- Revelation 3:7-8
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 22:6-7

trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), [horn](#), [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:18-21
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 24:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 4:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 8:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 8:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 8:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 8:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 8:12](#)
- [Revelation 8:13](#)
- [Revelation 9:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 9:13-15](#)
- [Revelation 11:15](#)
- [Revelation 18:21-22](#)

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:5-6](#)

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

Uses:

- Revelation 11:6-7

twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes**Definition:**

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:6-8
- Genesis 49:28-30
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:11-13](#)

vine, vines

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 15:1-2
- Luke 22:17-18
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:17-18](#)

vision, visions, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:9-12
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 24:22-24
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

Uses:

- [Revelation 9:16-17](#)

voice, voices

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42-45
- Luke 09:34-36
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 12:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456, G5586

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 1:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 4:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 6:1-2](#)
- [Revelation 7:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 8:13](#)
- [Revelation 9:13-15](#)
- [Revelation 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 10:8-9](#)

- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 14:17-18
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:6
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 21:3-4

waste, wastes, wasted, wasting, wasteland, wastelands

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:6-7
- Leviticus 26:37-39
- Matthew 26:6-9
- **Revelation 18:15-17**
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1110, H1197, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3765, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4875, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7722, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8437, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673, G4199

Uses:

- **Revelation 18:15-17**

watch, watches, watched, watching, watchman, watchmen, watchful

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:14-15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H5894, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G70, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

Uses:

- [Revelation 16:15-16](#)

water, waters, watered, watering

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22
- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Uses:

- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 19:6
- Revelation 22:17

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:23-24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), vineyard, [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23-25
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:9-10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18-19

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

Uses:

- Revelation 6:5-6
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:11-12

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:1-2
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

Uses:

- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 19:14-16](#)

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:2-4
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Matthew 07:24-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

Uses:

- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 13:18
- Revelation 17:9-10

woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12-14
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24-25
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

Uses:

- [Revelation 8:13](#)

- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 11:13-14
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:18-20

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [word](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 20:4

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:8-9
- Revelation 22:10-11
- Revelation 22:18-19

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 14:13
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 19:7-8

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 John 04:4-6
- 1 John 05:4-5
- John 01:29-31
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

Uses:

- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 16:12-14

worship

Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:5-7
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 07 General Notes
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:2
- Revelation 19:3-4
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 22:8-9

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:23-25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:30-32
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:18-19
- Mark 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

Uses:

- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:1-2
- Revelation 5:3-5

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23-24
- Matthew 03:7-9
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- Romans 01:18-19
- Romans 05:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:15-17](#)
- [Revelation 11:18](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 15:1](#)

- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 19:14-16

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), law, [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H7559, G1125

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 19:11-13](#)
- [Revelation 20:13-15](#)

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Jacob, Leah, Salt Sea, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- Isaiah 09:1-2
- Judges 04:10
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

Uses:

- [Revelation 7:7-8](#)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- Amos 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 51:34-35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726### Uses:
- [Revelation 14:1-2](#)

translationAcademy

Uses:

- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 11:18

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
 - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
 - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
 - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
 - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
 - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - Today the people in this house have been saved...
 - Today God has saved the people in this house...
 - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
 - The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:9-10
- Revelation 9:5-6
- Revelation 9:18-19
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:18
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 18:9-10
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:18-20

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 5:9-10
- Revelation 6:1-2
- Revelation 6:3-4
- Revelation 6:3-4
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 7:4-6
- Revelation 08 General Notes
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 8:6-7
- Revelation 8:6-7
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 8:12
- Revelation 8:13
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 11:19
- Revelation 11:19

- Revelation 12 General Notes
- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 12:13-14
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:11
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:14
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:3-4

- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 19:19-20
- Revelation 19:21
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 20:9-10
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 21:11-13
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:21-22
- Revelation 21:23-25
- Revelation 21:26-27
- Revelation 22:18-19

Apostrophe

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULB)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.
 - **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' "** (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)
 - He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says about this altar. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on it.' "
 - **Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you** (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)
 - As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them

Uses:

- [Revelation 18:21-22](#)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
 - ◇ Or:
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
 - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
 - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Revelation 01 General Notes
- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 05 General Notes
- Revelation 06 General Notes
- Revelation 07 General Notes
- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 11 General Notes
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12 General Notes
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 17 General Notes
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:7-8

- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:10-11
- Revelation 22:14-15
- Revelation 22:17

Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Uses:

- Revelation 17:3-5
- Revelation 21:9-10

Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter¹; its width will be two thirds of a meter ²; and its height will be two thirds of a meter." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] two and a half cubits
 - ◇ ^[2] one cubit and a half

Uses:

- Revelation 14:19-20
- Revelation 21:16-17
- Revelation 21:16-17

Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight	daric	gold coin	8.4 grams	shekel
various metals		11 grams	talent	various metals	33 kilograms	

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage	denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day	mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days	talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see **Copy or Borrow Words**)
 - "The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
 - "The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
 - "The one owed five hundred days' wages, and the other owed fifty days' wages."
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.²" (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] five hundred days's wages
 - ◇ ^[2] fifty day's wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ◇ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Uses:

- **Revelation 6:5-6**

Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters	———	———	———	Dry	omer	2 liters	Dry	ephah	22 liters	Dry	homer	220 liters	Dry	cor	220 liters	Dry	seah	7.7 liters	Dry	letheh	114.8 liters	Liquid	metrete	40 liters	Liquid	bath	22 liters	Liquid	hin	3.7 liters	Liquid	kab	1.23 liters	Liquid	log	0.31 liters
------	------------------	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	----------	-----	-------	-----------	-----	-------	------------	-----	-----	------------	-----	------	------------	-----	--------	--------------	--------	---------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	-----	------------	--------	-----	-------------	--------	-----	-------------

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa."
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket."
 - ◇ "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters³." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]one bath

- ◇ ^[2]one homer
- ◇ ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

Uses:

- Revelation 6:5-6

Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
1 shekel	11 grams	-	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
 - Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles."
 - Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."
 - Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."
 - Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."
 - Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.¹"
 - ◇ The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:
- [Revelation 16:20-21](#)

Copy or Borrow Words

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

Examples from the Bible

He saw a fig tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the seraphim; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of Malachi. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
 - □□□□□□□□□□ - A man's name in Hebrew letters.
 - "Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
 - **Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.
 - "Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.
 - **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".
 - "Sefania"
 - "Sefanaia"
 - "Sefanaya"

Uses:

- Revelation 9:10-12

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either distinguish the noun from other similar items, or they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between making a distinction between similar items and giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister who was very thankful.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister, who was very thankful.
 - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. The translator must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to the woman who bore him. (Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

... for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULB)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
 - **I hate those who serve worthless idols** (Psalm 31:6 ULB) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.
 - Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.
 - **... for your righteous judgments are good.** (Psalm 119:39 ULB)
 - ... for your judgments are good because they are righteous.
 - **Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?** (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.
 - Can Sarah bear a son even when she is ninety years old?
 - **I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised** (2 Samuel 22:4 ULB) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.
 - I will call on Yahweh, because he is worthy to be praised
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.
 - **You are my Son, whom I love. I am pleased with you.** (Luke 3:22 ULB)
 - You are my Son. I love you and I am pleased with you.
 - Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Uses:

- Revelation 9:20-21
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 17:1-2

Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “unhappy,” “impossible,” and “useless.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of “not.”

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

... so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
 - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
 - **... so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “... so that they may be fruitful.”
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished ...** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished ...”
 - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
 - “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Uses:

- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
 - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

Uses:

- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 15:1
- Revelation 22:16

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
 - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 7:4-6
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 9:5-6

End of Story

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

Different purposes for end of story information

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If translators do not use their language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land. (Acts 27:44 ULB)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways. (Acts 19:19-20 ULB)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary said, "My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house. (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULB)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart. (Luke 2:18-19 ULB)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words. (Luke 11:52-54 ULB)### Uses:

- [Revelation 22:12-13](#)

First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
 - **But David said to Saul, ”Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, ”I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
 - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
 - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Uses:

- **Revelation 1:1-3**

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 22:16](#)

Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
 - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
 - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
 - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - ... then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.
2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
 - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
 - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

Uses:

- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 9:18-19
- Revelation 12:3-4

Generic Noun Phrases

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
 So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
 the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.
 (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
 - **Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
 - “Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.” (Proverbs 12:2)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”
3. Use the word “any, as in ”any person” or “anyone.”
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Uses:

- Revelation 1:1-3
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 3:21-22

Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have gone into the land...”

Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
 - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
 - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
 - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
 - "When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ..."
 - **Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
 - "Yahweh said to Noah, "Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ..."
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

Uses:

- [Revelation 3:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 5:6-7](#)

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
 - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ... a young man named Paul¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
 - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

- ◇ ^[1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
 - It came about in Iconium that Paul¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Introduction to Revelation
- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:7-8
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 20:7-8

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
 - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
 - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
 - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
 - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 2:22-23

- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 7:11-12
- Revelation 9:1-2
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 21:23-25
- Revelation 22:3-5

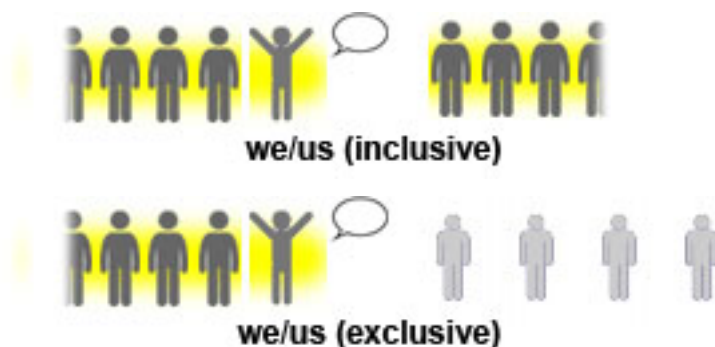
Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Uses:

- [Revelation 19:5](#)

Introduction of New and Old Participants

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are new participants. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are old participants.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus... This man came to Jesus at night time... Jesus replied to him (John 3:1)

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah.
(Judges 13:2 ULB)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah.
His wife was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2
ULB)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULB)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to with the noun phrase “the woman.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the woman and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULB)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh... (Judges 13:8 ULB)

Some languages have something on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (see Verbs)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
 - **Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULB) - Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

- There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).
 - There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.
2. If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.
- **It happened when he finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”** (Luke 11:1 ULB) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.
 - It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.
- **Joseph’s master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there.** (Genesis 39:20 ULB) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.
 - Joseph’s master took him and put him in prison, in the place where all the king’s prisoners were put, and he stayed there in the prison.

Uses:

- Revelation 5:6-7

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
 - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
 - **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
 - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
 - **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 5:13-14
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 19:5
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 20:11-12
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 22:12-13
- Revelation 22:12-13
- Revelation 22:12-13

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’” where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
 - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
 - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
 - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
 - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - I will make you become people who gather men.
 - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 02 General Notes
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:6-7
- Revelation 2:8-9
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:10-11
- Revelation 2:12-13
- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 2:14-15
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 2:20-21
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 2:22-23
- Revelation 2:24-25
- Revelation 2:24-25
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 03 General Notes
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 3:9-11

- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 3:12-13
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 3:14-16
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:17-18
- Revelation 3:19-20
- Revelation 3:19-20
- Revelation 3:21-22
- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 4:6
- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 05 General Notes
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 5:3-5
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 7:13-14
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 8:12
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 10 General Notes
- Revelation 10:1-2
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:6-7
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:13-14

- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 11:18
- Revelation 12 General Notes
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13 General Notes
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 14:6-7
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 15:2
- Revelation 16 General Notes
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 17 General Notes
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:8
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:9-10
- Revelation 17:11
- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 17:18
- Revelation 18 General Notes
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 18:9-10

- Revelation 18:14
- Revelation 18:14
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:9-10
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 19:14-16
- Revelation 20 General Notes
- Revelation 21 General Notes
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 21:21-22
- Revelation 21:23-25
- Revelation 22:1-2
- Revelation 22:12-13
- Revelation 22:14-15
- Revelation 22:14-15
- Revelation 22:16
- Revelation 22:16
- Revelation 22:17
- Revelation 22:17
- Revelation 22:17

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
 - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Uses:

- [Revelation 01 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 1:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 1:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 1:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 2:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 2:22-23](#)
- [Revelation 2:22-23](#)
- [Revelation 3:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 3:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 3:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 3:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 3:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 3:21-22](#)
- [Revelation 4:9-11](#)
- [Revelation 5:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 5:11-12](#)

- Revelation 6:5-6
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 7:1-3
- Revelation 7:13-14
- Revelation 7:15-17
- Revelation 8:3-5
- Revelation 8:3-5
- Revelation 9:3-4
- Revelation 10:1-2
- Revelation 10:10-11
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 11:15
- Revelation 12:10
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 13:9-10
- Revelation 13:15-17
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:11-12
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 16:2
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:8-9
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:10-11
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 16:17-19
- Revelation 16:20-21

- Revelation 17:15
- Revelation 17:16-17
- Revelation 17:18
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 18:4-6
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:21-22
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 18:23-24
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 19:17-18
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:4
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 21:3-4
- Revelation 21:3-4
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:1-2
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:6-7
- Revelation 22:10-11
- Revelation 22:18-19

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Revelation 4:4-5
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 5:11-12
- Revelation 7:4-6
- Revelation 7:4-6
- Revelation 9:16-17
- Revelation 11:1-2
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 11:8-9
- Revelation 11:10-12
- Revelation 11:13-14
- Revelation 11:16-17
- Revelation 12:1-2
- Revelation 12:5-6
- Revelation 13:5-6
- Revelation 13:18
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:3-5
- Revelation 14:19-20
- Revelation 19:3-4
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:5-6
- Revelation 21:11-13

- Revelation 21:16-17
- Revelation 21:16-17

Order of Events

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on Verbs)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: Verse Bridges)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.
 - **²⁰ But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
 - ²⁰ But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
 - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
 - Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.
 - **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).
 - **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets ...
 - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
 - Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.## Uses:

- [Revelation 1:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 5:1-2](#)

Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim, ... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim, ... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
 - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Uses:

- [Revelation 6:3-4](#)

- Revelation 6:3-4
- Revelation 6:5-6
- Revelation 6:5-6
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 6:7-8
- Revelation 6:9-11
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 8:1-2
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 11:15

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
 - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
 - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
 - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
 - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
 - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
 - “All you have done is lie to me.”
 - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Uses:

- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 21:3-4
- Revelation 21:5-6
- Revelation 21:11-13
- Revelation 22:12-13

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- [Revelation 9:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14:8](#)
- [Revelation 14:13](#)
- [Revelation 16:8-9](#)
- [Revelation 18:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 18:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 18:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 19:5](#)
- [Revelation 20:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 20:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 20:13-15](#)
- [Revelation 21:9-10](#)

Quotations and Quote Margins

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are underlined below.

- She said, “The food is ready. Come and eat.”
- “The food is ready. Come and eat,” she said.
- “The food is ready,” she said. “Come and eat.”

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning “said.”

But his mother answered and said, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULB)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (“ ”). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning “said.”
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples from the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

Zechariah said to the angel, “How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old.” (Luke 1:18 ULB)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, “Teacher, what must we do?” (Luke 3:12 ULB)

He said to them, “Do not collect more money than you are supposed to.” (Luke 3:13 ULB)

Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. “It will not happen,” he said. (Amos 7:3 ULB)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

“I will hide my face from them,” he said, “and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful.” (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULB)

“Therefore, those who can,” he said, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULB)

“For look, days are coming”—this is Yahweh’s declaration—“when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel” (Jeremiah 30:3 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
 - **“Therefore, those who can,” he said, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”** (Acts 25:5 ULB)
 - He said, “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
 - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” he said.
 - “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” he said. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”
 - **But his mother answered and said, “No, instead he will be called John.”** (Luke 1:60 ULB)
 - But his mother replied, “No, instead he will be called John.”
 - But his mother said, “No, instead he will be called John.”
 - But his mother answered like this, “No, instead he will be called John,” she said.

Uses:

- **Revelation 1:7-8**

Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
 - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
 - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
 - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
 - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
 - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
 - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
 - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
 - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

Uses:

- Revelation 19:1-2
- Revelation 19:11-13

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
 - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
 - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!
 - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
 - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Revelation 5:1-2
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Revelation 17:6-7
- Revelation 18:18-20

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
 - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
 - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
 - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- Revelation 1:9-11
- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 1:14-16
- Revelation 1:17-18
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 2:18-19
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:3-4
- Revelation 04 General Notes
- Revelation 4:1-3
- Revelation 4:6
- Revelation 4:7
- Revelation 06 General Notes
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 6:12-14
- Revelation 08 General Notes
- Revelation 8:8-9
- Revelation 8:10-11
- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 9:1-2
- Revelation 9:10-12
- Revelation 10 General Notes
- Revelation 10:1-2

- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 16:15-16
- Revelation 18:7-8
- Revelation 19:6
- Revelation 19:11-13
- Revelation 20:7-8
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:21-22

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
 - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 3:19-20
- Revelation 4:9-11
- Revelation 10:5-7
- Revelation 11:10-12

Symbolic Language

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be a fourth kingdom on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
 - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.
 - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)
 - After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.³
 - The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ ^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ ^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ ^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

Uses:

- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:1-2
- Revelation 2:3-5
- Revelation 2:16-17
- Revelation 2:26-29
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:1-2
- Revelation 3:7-8
- Revelation 4:4-5
- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 5:6-7
- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 5:8
- Revelation 09 General Notes
- Revelation 11:3-5
- Revelation 12:3-4
- Revelation 12:7-9
- Revelation 12:13-14
- Revelation 12:15-18
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Revelation 13:3-4
- Revelation 13:7-8
- Revelation 13:11-12
- Revelation 14:1-2
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:8
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:9-10
- Revelation 14:14-16
- Revelation 15:7-8
- Revelation 16:1
- Revelation 16:12-14
- Revelation 16:17-19

- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:1-2
- Revelation 17:12-14
- Revelation 18:1-3
- Revelation 19:7-8
- Revelation 20:1-3
- Revelation 20:5-6
- Revelation 20:13-15
- Revelation 21:7-8
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 21:26-27
- Revelation 22:1-2

Symbolic Prophecy

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See [dream and vision](#) for help translating “dream” and “vision.”) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images are a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for us. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past.” See [Predictive Past](#).

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- If God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.
- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The underlined phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest. His head and hair were as white as wool — as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULB)

As I looked,
thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
and the hair of his head was like pure wool. (Daniel 7:9 ULB)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULB)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULB)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The underlined verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh has spoken:

"I have nourished and brought up children, but they have rebelled against me. (Isaiah 1:1-2 ULB)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The underlined verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish.

In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations.

The people who walked in darkness have seen a great light;

those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light has shone on them.

(Isaiah 9:1-2 ULB)### Uses:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Introduction to Revelation](#)
- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 05 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 06 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 07 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 08 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 09 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 10 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 12 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 15 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 16 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 17 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 18 General Notes](#)

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - ”I exalt the Lord.”
 - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Revelation 1:7-8
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 3:9-11
- Revelation 6:15-17
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 9:13-15
- Revelation 10:3-4
- Revelation 10:8-9
- Revelation 12:11-12
- Revelation 16:3
- Revelation 16:4-7
- Revelation 18:7-8

Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹

[¹ Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

[²The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."^{16[1]}
 - ^[1]The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."^{16[1]}
 - ◇ ^[1]The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear."^[1]
 - ◇ ^[1]Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Uses:

- [Introduction to Revelation](#)

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
 - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- [Revelation 04 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 4:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 4:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 8:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 9:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 9:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 11:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13 General Notes](#)
- [Revelation 14:14-16](#)
- [Revelation 17:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 17:12-14](#)
- [Revelation 18:11-12](#)

- Revelation 18:11-12
- Revelation 18:11-12
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Revelation 21:11-13
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:18-20
- Revelation 21:21-22

Translating Son and Father

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible. The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, “This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

... no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.” (John 17:1-5 ULB)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULB)

Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? (John 14:9 ULB)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are essentially the same (they are both God), just as a human father and son are essentially the same, both human and sharing the same characteristics.

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [translationWords](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")### Uses:

- [Revelation 1:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 2:18-19](#)
- [Revelation 2:26-29](#)
- [Revelation 3:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 3:21-22](#)
- [Revelation 14:1-2](#)